



Driver & Vehicle
Standards
Agency

Individual Vehicle Approval (IVA) Inspection Manual

Buses and Coaches (M2 and M3)

April 2024



Keeping **Britain** moving, **safely** and **sustainably**



Driver and Vehicle Standards Agency ©Crown Copyright 2024.

You may re-use this information (not including logos) free of charge in any format or medium, under the terms of the Open Government Licence v3.0.

To view this licence, visit www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/ or write to the Information Policy Team, The National Archives, Kew, London TW9 4DU, or email: psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk

Any enquiries regarding this publication should be sent to us at enquiries@dvs.gov.uk

This publication is also available on the GOV.UK website at <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/iva-manual-for-vehicle-categories-m2-and-m3>

| | |
|---|--|
| Version Controls | 50 Couplings |
| Time bound concessions to required standards | 51 Flammability |
| Foreword | 52 Scope |
| 01 Noise | 52 Definitions |
| 02 Emissions | 52A Tilt |
| 03A Fuel Tanks | 52B Strength of Superstructure |
| 03B Rear Protective Devices (Under Run) | 52C Area Available for Passengers |
| 04 Rear Registration Plate Space | 52D Markings |
| 05 Steering Effort | 52E Protection against Fire Risks |
| 07 Audible Warning | 52F Electrical Equipment |
| 08 Indirect Vision | 52G Fire Extinguisher and First Aid |
| 09 Braking | 52H Number and Location of Exits |
| 10 Electromagnetic Compatibility | 52I Service Doors |
| 13 Anti – Theft / Immobiliser / Alarm | 52J Emergency Doors |
| 15 Seat Strength | 52K Emergency Windows |
| 17 Speedometer and Reverse Gear | 52L Emergency Hatches |
| 18 Statutory Plates | 52M Gangways and Staircase |
| 19 Seat Belt Anchorages | 52N Steps |
| 20 Installation of Lights | 52O Handrails and Handholds |
| 21 Retro Reflectors | 52P Passenger Seats and Space |
| 22 End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps | 52Q Communication with Driver |
| 23 Direction Indicators | 52R Hot Drinks Machine & Cooking Equipment |
| 24 Rear Registration Lamps | 52S Doors and Interior Compartments |
| 25 Headlamps | 52T Artificial Lighting |
| 26 Front Fog Lamps | 52U Guarding of Step Wells |
| 27 Towing Hooks | 52V Baggage and Occupant Protection |
| 28 Rear Fog Lamps | 52W Trap Doors |
| 29 Reversing Lamps | 52X Visual Entertainment |
| 31 Seat Belts | 52Y Articulated Section of Articulated Vehicles |
| 33 Identification of Controls | 52Z Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility |
| 34 Defrost / Demist | 62 Hydrogen Powered Motor Vehicles |
| 35 Wash / Wipe | 65 Advanced Emergency Braking Systems (AEBS) |
| 36 Heating Systems | 66 Lane Departure Warning Systems (LDWS) |
| 45 Safety Glass | 69 Electrical Safety |
| 46 Tyres | General Construction |
| 47 Speed Limiter | Glossary of Terms |
| 48 Masses and Dimensions | |

This page intentionally left blank

Version Control & Release Notes

| Section Number | Section Title | Revision Date | Revision Number |
|----------------|---|---------------|-----------------|
| | Foreword | 15/04/2024 | 10 |
| 01 | Noise | 15/04/2024 | 3 |
| 02 | Emissions | 01/07/2018 | 6 |
| 03A | Fuel Tanks | 15/04/2024 | 6 |
| 03B | Rear Protective Devices (Under Run) | 10/04/2018 | 6 |
| 04 | Rear Registration Plate Space | 10/04/2018 | 4 |
| 05 | Steering Effort | 10/04/2018 | 2 |
| 07 | Audible Warning | 24/04/2009 | 1 |
| 08 | Indirect Vision | 15/04/2024 | 4 |
| 09 | Braking | 29/10/2010 | 3 |
| 10 | Electromagnetic Compatibility | 10/04/2018 | 2 |
| 13 | Anti – Theft / Immobiliser / Alarm | 01/09/2020 | 5 |
| 15 | Seat Strength | 10/04/2018 | 7 |
| 17 | Speedometer and Reverse Gear | 01/09/2020 | 6 |
| 18 | Statutory Plates | 01/09/2020 | 8 |
| 19 | Seat Belt Anchorages | 01/09/2020 | 7 |
| 20 | Installation of Lights | 15/04/2024 | 7 |
| 21 | Retro Reflectors | 15/04/2024 | 5 |
| 22 | End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps | 15/04/2024 | 9 |
| 23 | Direction Indicators | 01/07/2018 | 6 |
| 24 | Rear Registration Lamps | 10/04/2018 | 4 |
| 25 | Headlamps | 01/07/2018 | 9 |
| 26 | Front Fog Lamps | 30/11/2011 | 2 |
| 27 | Towing Hooks | 10/04/2018 | 3 |
| 28 | Rear Fog Lamps | 15/04/2024 | 4 |
| 29 | Reversing Lamps | 15/04/2024 | 3 |
| 31 | Seat Belts | 15/04/2024 | 5 |
| 33 | Identification of Controls | 10/04/2018 | 5 |
| 34 | Defrost / Demist | 24/04/2009 | 1 |
| 35 | Wash / Wipe | 29/04/2010 | 3 |
| 36 | Heating Systems | 10/04/2018 | 3 |

| Section Number | Section Title | Revision Date | Revision Number |
|----------------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| 45 | Safety Glass | 10/04/2018 | 6 |
| 46 | Tyres | 15/04/2024 | 7 |
| 47 | Speed Limiter | 15/04/2024 | 4 |
| 48 | Masses and Dimensions | 15/04/2024 | 8 |
| 50 | Couplings | 10/04/2018 | 7 |
| 51 | Flammability | 24/04/2009 | 1 |
| 52 | Scope | 11/02/2013 | 2 |
| 52 | Definitions | 15/04/2024 | 5 |
| 52A | Tilt | 10/04/2018 | 2 |
| 52B | Strength of Superstructure | 30/04/2012 | 2 |
| 52C | Area Available for Passengers | 15/04/2024 | 3 |
| 52D | Markings | 15/04/2024 | 6 |
| 52E | Protection Against Fire Risks | 29/10/2010 | 3 |
| 52F | Electrical Equipment | 29/10/2010 | 2 |
| 52G | Fire Extinguisher and First Aid | 11/02/2013 | 3 |
| 52H | Number and Location of Exits | 15/04/2024 | 13 |
| 52I | Service Doors | 15/04/2024 | 9 |
| 52J | Emergency Doors | 15/04/2024 | 5 |
| 52K | Emergency Windows | 11/02/2013 | 3 |
| 52L | Emergency Hatches | 11/02/2013 | 3 |
| 52M | Gangways and Staircase | 15/04/2024 | 9 |
| 52N | Steps | 11/02/2013 | 5 |
| 52O | Handrails and Handholds | 11/02/2013 | 4 |
| 52P | Passenger Seats and Space | 15/04/2024 | 8 |
| 52Q | Communication With Driver | 24/04/2009 | 1 |
| 52R | Hot Drinks Machine & Cooking Equipment | 11/02/2013 | 2 |
| 52S | Doors and Interior Compartments | 24/04/2009 | 1 |
| 52T | Artificial Lighting | 30/04/2012 | 2 |
| 52U | Guarding of Step Wells | 10/04/2018 | 2 |
| 52V | Baggage and Occupant Protection | 24/04/2009 | 1 |
| 52W | Trap Doors | 24/04/2009 | 1 |
| 52X | Visual Entertainment | 31/07/2011 | 2 |

| Section Number | Section Title | Revision Date | Revision Number |
|-----------------------|---|----------------------|------------------------|
| 52Y | Articulated Section of Articulated Vehicles | 24/04/2009 | 1 |
| 52Z | Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility | 15/04/2024 | 12 |
| 62 | Hydrogen Powered Motor Vehicles | 01/09/2020 | 3 |
| 65 | Advanced emergency braking systems | 01/07/2018 | 1 |
| 66 | Lane departure warning systems | 01/07/2018 | 1 |
| 69 | Electrical Safety | 15/04/2024 | 2 |
| | General Construction | 10/04/2018 | 3 |
| | Glossary of Terms | 15/04/2024 | 6 |

Release Notes

Version 14.0

| Section Number | Section Title | MOI change | Required Standard | TSE Incorporated | Details |
|----------------|--|------------|-------------------|------------------|--|
| - | Foreword | N | N | No | Updated UNECE Regulation for Indirect Vision (CMS) |
| 01 | Noise | N | N | No | Application of RS7 to Electric Vehicles |
| 03A | Fuel Tanks | Y | Y | No | Removal of outdated directives in MOI. Addition of RS14 and Note 3 to clarify Hydrogen requirements |
| 08 | Indirect Vision | N | Y | No | Remove Note 5 and add the reference of CMS requirements to new RS 9 to align with the N2 N3 IVA Inspection Manual. Improve format of Figure 1 |
| 20 | Installation of Lights | Y | Y | Yes | Revise RS1 to include allowance of red light from front & Revise Fig 3 to define zone area, and insertion of Figure 3a diagram and associated text to clarify 'view to the front' and 'view to the rear' (TSE IVA M2 & M3 020 005) Revision of Figure 4 to align with other IVA manuals. Revise RS6 to clarify 'fixed open position' & New Note 2 referenced from RS6. (TSE IVA M2 & M3 020 002). Revise MOI to clarify consideration of tyres. (TSE IVA M2M3 020 006) |
| 21 | Retro Reflectors | N | Y | No | Amend Table 1 Max. Height Side Retro Reflectors. |
| 22 | End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lights | N | N | Yes | Clarify minimum no. of end-outline marker lamps required, correct formatting, & clarify height requirements in Table 1 for End outline marker lamps, (IVA TSE M2M3 022 003), correct all references from Note 1 to Note 2 in Table 1 at 'number' column. |
| 28 | Rear Fog Lamps | N | Y | Yes | Revise Table 1 Max. Height column and add new Note 3 (TSE M2M3 028 001) |

| Section Number | Section Title | MOI change | Required Standard | TSE Incorporated | Details |
|----------------|-------------------------------|------------|-------------------|------------------|---|
| 29 | Reversing Lamps | N | Y | Yes | Revise RS6 (TSE IVA M2M3 029 002) |
| 31 | Seat Belts | N | N | No | Amend reference to RS in Note 9 |
| 46 | Tyres | N | N | Yes | Revise Annex 1 to include requirements for retreaded tyres (TSE IVA N2N3 046 001) |
| 47 | Speed Limiter | Y | N | Yes | Add exemptions to the Application; Revise Note 1 (TSE IVA 0M2M3 047 002). |
| 48 | Masses and Dimensions | Y | N | No | Add items to Annex 1 Column A & B; Revise 'Access ramps' in Column B to align with other IVA manuals; Clarify items in Column C; Revise Annex 2 table to include 'Zero emission vehicles' |
| 52 | Definitions | N | N | No | Add definition of horse shoe type seating to Item 3 in 'Gangway' |
| 52C | Area available for Passengers | N | N | No | Clarification of Note 1 |
| 52D | Markings | N | Y | No | Revise RS3, Note 3, and Note 5 to incorporate Pictograms |
| 52H | Number and Location of Exits | N | Y | No | Improve format of diagram at Note 13; Amend headings above RS3 and RS20 |
| 52I | Service Doors | N | Y | No | Correction of item number reference at RS 32 |
| 52J | Emergency Doors | N | Y | No | Clarification of RS 5 Item c |
| 52M | Gangways and Staircase | Y | Y | No | Add new Note 8 referenced from RS 17 |
| 52P | Passenger Seats and Space | N | Y | No | Correct Note reference at RS 5 |

| Section Number | Section Title | MOI change | Required Standard | TSE Incorporated | Details |
|----------------|---|------------|-------------------|------------------|---|
| 52Z | Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility | N | Y | No | Clarification of application heading above RS 6; remove reference to Time Bound Concession at RS 20. |
| 69 | Electrical Safety | Y | Y | Yes | Section renamed to match RV(A)R 2020; application clarified; reference to Glossary of Terms added to MOI. Add detail to MOI to clarify requirements for unmodified mass produced vehicles. Removal of RS3 & re-numbering of remaining RS (TSE IVA M2M3 069 001) |
| - | Glossary of Terms | - | - | No | Definition of Hybrid Electric Vehicle and Zero Emission Vehicle added. |

Time bound concessions to required standards

| Section Number | Section Title | End Date | Details | Notes |
|----------------|---------------|----------|---------|-------|
| | | | | |

This page intentionally left blank

Foreword

This Manual is a detailed guide on the examination of vehicles submitted to an authorised site under the Individual Vehicle Approval (IVA) scheme.

It is produced for the examiners who carry out the examinations and for vehicle presenters and other interested parties who wish to familiarise themselves with the technical requirements and inspection procedures.

Application

The IVA scheme is one of three routes for a road vehicle to gain approval and thereby obtain licensing and registration in UK.

The IVA route is open to vehicles falling under the following categories:

M1, M2, M3,

N1, N2, N3

O1, O2, O3, O4

This manual covers solely the IVA technical requirements for vehicles of the following categories:

- M2** Vehicles used for the carriage of passengers, comprising more than eight seats in addition to the driver's seat, and having a maximum weight not exceeding 5 metric tons.
- M3** Vehicles used for the carriage of passengers, comprising more than eight seats in addition to the driver's seat, and having a maximum weight exceeding 5 metric tons.

For information on other vehicle categories, the following DVSA IVA inspection manuals should be consulted.

- The Light Vehicle IVA Inspection Manual for vehicle category M1.
- The Light Goods Vehicle IVA Inspection Manual for vehicle category N1.
- The Heavy vehicle IVA Inspection Manual for vehicle categories N2 and N3.
- The Trailer IVA Inspection Manual for vehicle categories O1, O2, O3 and O4.

Obligatory Individual Approval Certificates

The IVA scheme is one of three routes for a road vehicle to gain approval and thereby obtain licensing and registration in UK. For M2 and M3 category vehicles (minibuses, buses, and coaches) the other two routes are: European Whole Vehicle Type Approval (EWWTA) and National Small Series Type Approval (NSSTA). Refer to the Road Vehicles (Approval) Regulations 2020 (SI 2020 No. 818) for more information.

All M2 and M3 vehicles presented for registration in the UK and whose date of manufacture is on or after 29 July 2011 must comply in order to be registered.

Older buses imported from overseas have the choice of using IVA or COIF (Certificate of Initial Fitness) to obtain registration.

For classes I, II & III only, (vehicles having a passenger capacity exceeding 22 passengers), as an alternative to section 52Z (Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility) of this manual, applicants may submit their vehicle for a PSVAR (Accessibility) inspection.

This is a slightly different set of requirements and may suit some applicants better. There will be an additional fee for this inspection.

Approval Process

With the IVA inspection, the onus is on the applicant to provide evidence of compliance. This can, for example, be in the form of manufacturer's markings on the vehicle or component, an EC certificate of conformity for an incomplete or base vehicle and details of the systems approved, documentary evidence from the competent authority in the country of origin or the manufacturer, submission of a test report from an accredited Technical Service or a combination of such elements, and it may also include a degree of visual examination and practical tests. Applicants may be required to dismantle certain parts of the vehicle to allow DVSA examiners to carry out a full and meaningful inspection.

Applications and supportive documentation will be assessed prior to the issue of an appointment. Examination of the vehicle will include verification checks to confirm as far as possible compliance with the required standards.

A vehicle built to a later Regulation or Directive that that stipulated in the "Summarised Table of requirements for vehicles" will be acceptable for IVA examination.

Where evidence of compliance is supplied, and no obvious modification has been carried out; assume compliance has been met.

The physical examination criterion for this part of the process is contained in Sections 1 to 60 of this manual.

Scope of inspection

The design and construction requirements applicable to new road vehicles are contained within the Road Vehicles (Approval) Regulations 2020. The inspection procedures within this manual have been developed to assess as far as practicable the ability of the vehicle to comply with those Regulations. This manual is however not a legal interpretation of the Regulations.

The issue of an Approval Certificate should not be taken as absolute evidence that the vehicle can legally be used on the road, since there may be other applicable requirements contained in other regulations.

Examiners are not required to carry out a roadworthiness inspection but where obvious safety defects are noted the vehicle may be subject to prohibition action, The IVA certificate will not be issued and where applicable it may be indicated on the IVA 30 (refusal to issue a certificate) that a relevant section of the inspection was “Unable to be assessed fully” due to the condition of an item.

The condition of an item in isolation is not a reason for an item failing to meet the requirements. However, if the condition of an item is such that a meaningful assessment cannot be made, then the IVA 30 should indicate that the applicable section/area was unable to be assessed and state the reason for this action.

NOTE: The vehicle will be assessed for compliance in all modes of operation (as required for normal road use), for example, in the case of dual fuelled, when running on each separate fuel source etc. unless otherwise specified.

Method of Inspection

The examination will be limited to parts of the vehicle which can be readily seen without dismantling. However, the presenter might be required to open lockable compartments and remove engine covers, inspection/access panels, trims, or carpeting, etc. in order to gain access to items subject to examination.

The visual assessment of certain items e.g. fuel tanks (which in Type Approval undergo a physical test) might not always be sufficient to satisfy the examiners that the vehicle complies with the requirements of the regulations. In such circumstances the onus is on the applicant to demonstrate, for example, by the production of satisfactory test result documentation, or (by arrangement) during construction of the inspection of relevant structural elements, that the vehicle complies with the requirements of the regulations.

In some areas of the inspection, evidence that the vehicle complies with the relevant criteria may be submitted in the form of documentation. This can, for example, be satisfactory evidence that the vehicle complies with the relevant requirements of a European Directive.

For any technical subject an appropriate type approval certificate or a test report from a recognised test house will be accepted as an alternative provided that the vehicle can be identified as belonging to the type to which the documentation refers.

In certain cases, calculations will be required to prove compliance. Where these are required they should be submitted with the application for inspection to Technical Services Branch for verification prior to the inspection. Failure to produce these calculations may delay or prohibit the inspection appointment being confirmed.

If the examiner has any doubts over any item covered by documentary evidence, calculations, or declarations, they have the right to ask for the original copies of these approvals / declarations which were accepted at time of application, to compare against the vehicle they are examining.

Use of this manual

The manual has been arranged in the same order as the Framework Regulation from which the inspection criteria is derived. Each inspection area broadly covers the requirements that vehicles must meet or exceed based upon the National IVA scheme.

General Construction is a section that does not explicitly exist in EWVTA, rather it is implicit that unsafe vehicles are not permitted to be approved.

Note: For areas where documentary evidence is not required all vehicles will be subject to a visual inspection as detailed within the method of inspection.

Special Purpose Vehicles. (SPV)

Certain vehicles are classified as Special Purpose Vehicles they may be subject to additional exemptions from the required standards but only where the special function of the vehicle makes it impossible to comply.

Armoured Vehicles are considered to be Special purpose, but any applicants requesting exemption under Special Purpose Vehicle status, must at the time of application, submit to DVSA specific documentary evidence supporting any such request.

N.B. Vehicles fitted with specialised equipment may be subject to additional exemption where specified in the EC Framework Directive on items normally assessed by visual inspection only, (i.e. not subject to mandatory Directive compliance). Applicants requesting such exemptions should at the time of application, submit to DVSA any vehicle specific documentary evidence supporting any such request.

Refusal to examine

The examination of a vehicle may be refused for any of the following reasons

- the vehicle is not submitted for examination at the time and place appointed
- the correct fee has not been paid
- the vehicle submitted for examination is of the incorrect category
- the vehicle cannot be driven or has insufficient fuel or oil to enable the test to be completed
- the vehicle is presented in a dirty or dangerous condition such as to make it unreasonable for the examination to be carried out
- a load or items on the vehicle are not secured or removed as requested
- a proper examination cannot be carried out because any door, tailgate, boot lid, engine cover, fuel cap or other device designed to be readily opened cannot be opened
- the condition of the vehicle (in the opinion of the examiner) is such that proper examination of the vehicle would involve a danger of injury to any person or damage to the vehicle or any other property
- there was no means of identifying the vehicle, i.e. the vehicle identification number was missing or did not relate to the vehicle, or where evidence indicates that the VIN has been tampered with to change the identity of the vehicle
- the presenter does not remain in the vehicle or its vicinity and operate the controls, drive the vehicle or to remove, refit panels as requested to allow a meaningful examination of the vehicle or is uncooperative.

Run Lock

Run Lock systems will be considered on a case by case basis.

Summarised Table of requirements for Buses and Coaches

| Section Number | Directive Requirement | as amended by # | UNECE Regulations | M2 & M3 |
|---|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Noise | 70/157/EEC | 1999/101/EC | 51.02 | Approval & Inspection |
| 2 Emissions | 70/220/EEC / 88/77/EEC | See Section | 83.05 & 49.04 | Approval |
| 3 Fuel tank & rear under-run | 70/221/EEC | 2006/20/EC | 34.02 & 58.01 | Approval & Inspection |
| 4 Rear registration plate space | 70/222/EEC | | | Inspection |
| 5 Steering effort | 70/311/EEC | 1999/07/EC | 79.01 | Approval |
| 7 Audible warning | 70/388/EEC | 87/354/EC | 28.00 | Inspection |
| 8 Indirect vision | 2003/97/EC | | 46.04 (for CMS) | Inspection |
| 9 Braking | 71/320/EEC | 98/12/EC | 13.08 / 13H | Approval |
| 10 EMC | 72/245/EEC | 2006/28/EC | 10.03 | Approval |
| 13 Anti-theft | 74/61/EEC | 95/56/EC | 18.02 / 97.00 / 116.00 | Inspection |
| 15 Seat strength | 74/408/EEC | 2005/39/EC | 80.01 | Inspection |
| 17 Speedo & reverse gear | 75/443/EEC | 97/39/EC | 39.00 | Inspection |
| 18 Statutory plates | 76/114/EEC | 78/507/EEC | | Inspection |
| 19 Seat belt anchorages | 76/115/EEC | 2005/41/EC | 14.05 | Approval |
| 20 Installation of lighting and signalling devices | | | 48.03 | Inspection |
| 21 Retro reflectors | | | 3 / 150 / 104 | Inspection |
| 22 End outline, position, stop & side marker lamps | | | 7 / 148 | Inspection |
| 23 Direction indicators | | | 6 / 148 | Inspection |
| 24 Rear registration plate lamp | | | 4 / 148 | Inspection |

Summarised Table of requirements for Buses and Coaches

| Section Number | Directive Requirement | as amended by # | UNECE Regulations | M2 & M3 |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| 25 Headlamps | | | 8 / 20 / 31 / 98 / 112 / 123 / 149 | Inspection |
| 25A Cornering lamps | | | 119 / 149 | Inspection |
| 26 Front fog lamps | | | 19 / 149 | Inspection |
| 27 Tow hooks | 77/389/EEC | 96/64/EC | | Inspection |
| 28 Rear fog lamps | | | 38 / 148 | Inspection |
| 29 Reversing lamps | | | 23 / 148 | Inspection |
| 30 Parking lamps | | | 77 / 148 | Inspection |
| 31 Seat belts | 77/541/EEC | 2005/40/EC | 16.04 | Inspection |
| 33 Identification of controls | 78/316/EEC | 94/53/EC | 121.00 | Inspection |
| 34 Defrost / Demist | | | | Inspection |
| 35 Wash / Wipe | | | | Inspection |
| 36 Heater systems | 2001/56/EC | 2006/119/EC | 122.00 | Inspection |
| 45 Safety Glass | | | 43:00 | Inspection |
| 46 Tyres | 92/23/EEC | 2005/11/EC | 30.02 / 54.00 / 64.01 / 117.01 | Inspection |
| 47 Speed limiter | 92/24/EEC | 2004/11/EC | 89.00 | Inspection |
| 48 Masses & Dimensions | 97/27/EC | 2003/19/EC | 107.02 | Inspection |
| 50 Couplings | 94/20/EC | | 55.01 | Inspection |
| 51 Flammability | 95/28/EC | | 118.00 | Approval |
| 52 Buses & Coaches | 2001/85/EC | | 107.02 | Inspection |
| 62 Hydrogen Powered Motor Vehicles | Reg (EC) 79/2009 | EU/406/2010 | 134 | Approval |
| 65 Advanced emergency braking systems | EU. 347/2012 | | 131. | Approval |

Summarised Table of requirements for Buses and Coaches

| Section Number | Directive Requirement | as amended by # | UNECE Regulations | M2 & M3 |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 66 Lane departure warning systems | EU 351/2012 | | 130 | Approval |
| 69 Electric/Hybrid Vehicles | | | 100.01 | Approval & Inspection |

Vehicles may be approved to a later level Directive or regulation, these approvals will be acceptable

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Replace Inspection with Approval for section 19 (Seat Belt Anchorages) and amend the Summarised Table of Requirements |
| 3 | 29/04/2010 | Add statement to foreword to show that the Examiner has the right to request any documentary evidence that was supplied to Swansea at time of application if they are in any doubt over an item covered by this evidence. |
| 4 | 29/10/2010 | Clean up text in foreword |
| 5 | 03/05/2011 | Reword the note in 'Scope of Inspection' |
| 6 | 30/04/2012 | Add Section 62 to the Table of Requirements |
| 7 | 10/04/2018 | Reword bullet point 9, Refusal to Examine, Reword of "Obligatory individual approval certificates, add run lock, SPV & Special Equipment change VOSA to DVSA, added electric vehicles |
| 8 | 01/07/2018 | Add sections 65 and 66 (AEBS & LDWS) |
| 9 | 01/09/2020 | Update in line with RV(A)R 2020 |
| 10 | 15/04/2024 | Updated UNECE Regulation for Indirect Vision (CMS) |

This page intentionally left blank

01 Noise

Application: All Vehicles (Electric vehicles - RS7 only)

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>The examiner will ensure that the evidence is relevant to the vehicle as presented for test.</p> <p>Note 1: Only a minor modification to the exhaust system is allowed. If modified the noise must be assessed with a static noise test.</p> <p>Minor modification means :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i) A change to length of tail pipe after the last silencer of more than 2 metres. (Any change up to 2 metres is allowed and would not require a noise test to be carried out) ii) Any change in the length of exhaust pipe forward of the last silencer. iii) Any significant change in the direction the exhaust pipe outlet faces i.e. Original; outlet was to the offside, now positioned to the rear. <p>Any change other than to pipe work length, i.e. a new silencer, or other equipment, change in pipe diameter etc., means that a new approval test is required.</p> <p>Note 2: Manufacturers drain holes are permitted in the system.</p> <p>Note 3: Where a modification has been carried out to the air braking system a test report must confirm that the vehicle complies with the directive listed in the front of this manual or an inspection to confirm that air brake silencers are fitted to all additional or modified air brake exhaust outlets.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence of compliance with the required standard for "Noise" (see Note 1). 2. The exhaust system must be fitted with a silencer. 3. The exhaust system must be securely mounted. 4. Exhaust system components must be secure. 5. The exhaust outlet must be positioned so that exhaust gases cannot damage other components of the vehicle or cause a hazard to persons in the vehicle. 6. There must be no leaks from the exhaust system (see Note 2). 7. Where an air braking system has been modified, any high pressure brake exhaust outlet must be fitted with a silencer, or satisfactory evidence supplied to show compliance with the required standard (see Note 3). <p>Where the exhaust system has had a minor modification</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. The measured sound level must not exceed 99dbA (see Notes 4 & 5). |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|-------------------|
| <p>Note 4: Where examiners are required to undertake a noise test, they should refer to the appropriate work instruction for details of how the test should be conducted.</p> <p>Note 5: Where the examiner has doubts that the vehicle noise test result may be falsely low then evidence of compliance must be supplied.</p> | |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 03/05/2011 | Remove noise test procedure from MOI and add Notes 4 & 5 |
| 3 | 15/04/2024 | Application of RS7 to Electric vehicles |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

02 Emissions

Application: All Vehicles fitted with piston engines used for the propulsion of the vehicle

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | |
|---|---|------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| <p>Ensure that the vehicle as presented has satisfactory evidence of compliance to the required standard and has not been subject to modifications that may invalidate the approval.</p> <p>An EC type-approval issued to the most representative base vehicle remains valid irrespective of change in reference weight due to conversion, e.g. addition of bodywork or armour plating.</p> <p>Where evidence of compliance has been provided, subsequent modification to the exhaust system will be permitted providing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> it is to the exhaust system after the last silencer; and the emissions control device is identical to that fitted before the modification. (as listed on an original approval or test report) <p>For M3 motor caravans or ambulances, the requirements applicable to the base vehicle (which may be M2 or N2) are acceptable.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> An M2 or M3 vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence of compliance with the required standard for either “Light duty emissions” or Heavy duty “Emissions” (see Table 1). The exhaust must not emit excessive smoke or vapour of any colour to an extent likely to obscure the vision of other road users. | | | |
| | Table 1 | | | |
| | Light Duty Emissions (M2 only) | | | |
| | Manufactured Date | Directive Requirement | As amended by | |
| | | 70/220/EEC | 2003/76/EC, | Row B Limits apply (Euro 4) |
| | Vehicles on or after 01/01/2012 | Reg (EC) 715/2007 | | Annex I table 2 Euro 5 |
| | Vehicles on or after 01/09/2016 | Reg (EC) 715/2007 | | Annex I table 1 Euro 6 |
| | Vehicles on or after 01/03/2020 | Reg (EU) 2017/1151 | | WLTP |
| | Heavy Duty Emissions (M2 & M3) | | | |
| | Manufactured Date | Directive Requirement | As amended by | |
| | Vehicles, before 1 st October 2009 | 88/77/EEC | 2001/27/EC, | Row B1 Limits apply (Euro IV) |
| | Vehicles, on or after 1 st October 2009 | 88/77/EEC | 99/66/EC, | Row B2 Limits apply (Euro V) |
| | Vehicles on or after 01/09/2018 | EC595/2009 | | Annex I limit values Euro VI |

Emissions 02

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 22/01/2010 | Add Table 1 |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Add note 1 and link to Table 1 |
| 4 | 03/05/2011 | Combine original RS 1 and 2 and then renumber standards, remove dates from table 1 and add note 1 |
| 5 | 10/04/2018 | Amend Note 1 |
| 6 | 01/07/2018 | Update Table 1, remove Note 1. |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

03A Fuel Tanks

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Ensure that the vehicle as presented has satisfactory evidence of compliance to the required standard and carry out an installation check ensuring there appears to be no modifications present that would invalidate the evidence.</p> <p>Fuel Tanks The requirements for liquid fuel tanks apply only to fuel tanks used primarily for the propulsion of the vehicle.</p> <p>The required standard for Gaseous Fuels: ECE 67.01 – LPG fuel systems. or ECE 115.00 – Retrofit LPG fuel systems</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Requires compliance with the installation requirements of ECE 67.01. or <p>An Installation Certificate from an Approved Installation Engineer;</p> <p>A Comparable Standard for LPG ECE 110.00 – CNG fuel systems, or</p> <p>ECE 115.00 – Retrofit CNG fuel systems</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Requires compliance with the installation requirements of ECE 110.00., or <p>An Installation Certificate from an Approved Installation Engineer;</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory documentary evidence with the required standard for “Fuel Tanks” (see Note 1). <p>Installation Check</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> A fuel tank must not be located in, or form part of an occupant compartment or other compartment integral with it. There must not be an aperture in a partition separating the occupant compartment from the fuel tank that would allow fuel to flow freely into the occupant compartment during normal conditions of use. The fuel filler opening must not be located in the occupant, luggage, or engine compartment. The fuel tank must be securely attached to the vehicle. The fuel tank must be positioned so it is protected from damage from protruding parts or sharp edges in the event of a front or rear impact. The fuel tank must be mounted so as not to be fouled by moving parts of the vehicle, or likely to be subject to abrasion by adjacent parts. The tank must not be mounted in a position that would allow any fuel leaking from the tank or pipe work into the occupant compartment. |

Fuel Tanks 03A

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>A Comparable Standard for CNG Check that an Approval / Test Report is presented with the vehicle and that there appears to be no modifications that would invalidate the evidence.</p> <p>Note 1: Check that an Approval/Test Report is presented with the vehicle and that there appears to be no modifications that would invalidate the evidence.</p> <p>Note 2: The cap and venting device must be those approved for the tank such that only the pipe work between them and the tank may be modified.</p> <p>Note 3: Hydrogen fuelled vehicles Check that an Approval / Test Report is presented with the vehicle and that there appears to be no modifications that would invalidate the evidence of compliance with the technical provisions of either:</p> <p>Regulation (EC) 79/2009, or</p> <p>UN ECE Regulation 134</p> | <p>9. Any fuel filler neck or vent must not allow spilt fuel to be able to fall onto the exhaust system.</p> <p>10. An approved vent device must be fitted to the fuel tank.</p> <p>11. An approved fuel filler cap must positively locate to the filler neck and incorporate an adequate sealing arrangement so that a fuel leak is not possible (See Note 2).</p> <p>12. All metal fuel tanks must have an earth path to prevent the build-up of static electricity. (this may be a separate bonding or the mounting arrangement where it does not isolate the tank).</p> <p>13. The fuel filler cap must either be tethered to the vehicle or be of a lockable type where the key can only be removed when the cap is locked or an automatically opening and closing, non-removable fuel filler cap.</p> <p>Hydrogen fuelled vehicles</p> <p>14. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory documentary evidence for Hydrogen fuel systems (including storage tanks)(see Note 3).</p> |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/04/2010 | Change RS 13 regarding the fuel cap tether / locking key requirement. |
| 3 | 10/04/2018 | Amend MOI & RS to match N2/3 |
| 4 | 01/07/2018 | Addition of Hydrogen legislation |
| 5 | 01/09/2020 | Tanks for gaseous fuels MOI clarified |
| 6 | 15/04/2024 | Removal of outdated directives in MOI. Addition of RS14 and Note 3 to clarify Hydrogen requirements |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

03B Rear Protective Devices (Under Run)

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>A vehicle of category M2 or M3 is not required to be fitted with a separate rear under run device, providing the rear body structure is substantial enough to prevent under-run by a smaller vehicle.</p> <p>Ensure, where relevant, the vehicle or device as presented is accompanied by satisfactory evidence.</p> <p>A separate device will be required:-</p> <p>Where the minimum height of the rear structure exceeds 550mm, measured across the rear to within 100mm on either side in relation to the width of the widest rear axle, (excluding any tyre bulging close to the ground). This requirement must be satisfied at least on a line at a distance of not more than 450 mm forward of the rear extremity of the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 1: Evidence of Compliance required only:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • when a separate device is fitted or • where the rear of the body does not look visually strong enough. <p>Note 2: Evidence of compliance may be;</p> <p>A vehicle Approval / Test Report or</p> <p>In the case of a separate device, be accompanied by an approval, test report or tested and witnessed by the approving authority and a check that the installation relates to the evidence, or</p> <p>Calculations submitted to the approving authority (in advance) and a check that the installation relates to the evidence.</p> <p>Note 3: Where a lift is installed at the rear of the vehicle this will then be deemed to form part of the structure of the vehicle.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where required the vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence of compliance regarding the protective system (see Notes 1 & 2). 2. The rear structure must be of sufficient strength to prevent under-run by a smaller vehicle (see Note 3). 3. Any separate device must be fitted as close to the rear of the vehicle as possible. 4. When the vehicle is unladen the lower edge of the device (separate device or body structure) must at no point be more than 550 mm above the ground. 5. The width of any separate device must at no point exceed the width of the rear axle measured at the outermost points of the wheels, (excluding the bulging of the tyres close to the ground). 6. The width of any device (separate device or body structure) must not be less than that of the widest rear axle by more than 100 mm on either side. |

Rear Under Run 03B

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Add the word minimum to the MOI 2 nd paragraph |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Reword MOI 2 nd paragraph |
| 4 | 30/11/2011 | Add note 2 and link to RS2 |
| 5 | 11/02/2013 | Insert new Note 1 |
| 6 | 10/04/2018 | Amend MOI |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

04 Rear Registration Plate Space

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|-------|--------|-------|--------|------------------------------------|----------|-----|-----|--|----------|-----|-----|
| <p>All vehicles must have a suitable place to mount a rear registration plate.</p> <p>Vehicles which are approved to Directive 70/222/EEC will not require an inspection to this section, providing the vehicle has not been modified.</p> <p>With an “IVA Test” plate of the required size placed onto the space provided, check that it is visible and that the whole of the shaded portion (yellow on DVSA supplied equipment) can be easily seen from a height of 1.5m from all points along a 21.5m line on the ground placed at 10.75m (centralised to the centre of the available rear reg. plate space) behind and parallel to the rear of the vehicle.</p> <p>Minor intrusions up to 5mm by mounting channels / retaining lugs into the shaded area will be permitted. These hold the plate in place along its edges but will still allow the registration mark to be displayed.</p> <p>Note1:.A plate hanging from the vehicle with no structure or support brackets behind it would be considered unacceptable.</p> <p>Note2: Euro space dimensions taken from Directive 70/222/EEC.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All vehicles must comply with one of the “options” listed in table 1. 2. The space must permit the mounting of a plate in a position as close to vertical as possible taking into account the shape of the bodywork. 3. An external body surface or a purpose-designed mounting system securely attached to the vehicle must be provided to hold the plate in a fixed position (see Note 1). 4. The whole of the shaded portion of the IVA Test plate must be capable of being easily seen from every point along the test line. <p>Table 1</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th></th> <th>Width</th> <th>Height</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Euro space (See Note 2)</td> <td>Option 1</td> <td>520</td> <td>120</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Option 2</td> <td>340</td> <td>240</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | | | Width | Height | Euro space (See Note 2) | Option 1 | 520 | 120 | | Option 2 | 340 | 240 |
| | | Width | Height | | | | | | | | | | |
| Euro space (See Note 2) | Option 1 | 520 | 120 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Option 2 | 340 | 240 | | | | | | | | | | |

Rear Registration Plate Space 04

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|-----------------|-------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/10/2010 | Rearrange order of notes |
| 3 | 30/04/2012 | Remove 'Yellow' from RS4 and reword Note 3 |
| 4 | 10/04/2018 | Insert new paragraph "Minor Intrusions" in MOI amend RS2 & 3 Amend note 1 add note 3 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

05 Steering Effort

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>Ensure the vehicle as presented has satisfactory evidence of compliance to the required standard.</p> <p>Where modifications have taken place, a lock to lock check must be carried out to check the system.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence of compliance with the required standard for "Steering Effort". 2. The steering system must operate smoothly from lock to lock and without undue stiffness. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 10/04/2018 | MOI updated. |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

07 Audible Warning

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Ensure that the vehicle is fitted with a horn which when operated emits a continuous uniform sound that is capable of giving audible warning of the approach or position of the vehicle to which it is fitted.</p> <p>Additional panic alarm devices are permitted.</p> <p>Note 1: For the purposes of this item "horn" means an audible warning device not being a bell, gong, or siren.</p> <p>Note 2: In the case of an Armoured vehicle:-</p> <p>Exemption from RS 3 & 4 are permissible where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the Approval Authority that the special purpose of the vehicle makes it impossible to fully comply;</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle must be fitted with a horn (see Note 1). 2. The horn must be securely attached to the vehicle. 3. When operated the horn must emit a continuous uniform sound (see Note 2). 4. The horn as installed, must give an equivalent level of warning to other road users as that of an equivalent M2/M3 EC Type Approved vehicle (see Note 2). |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

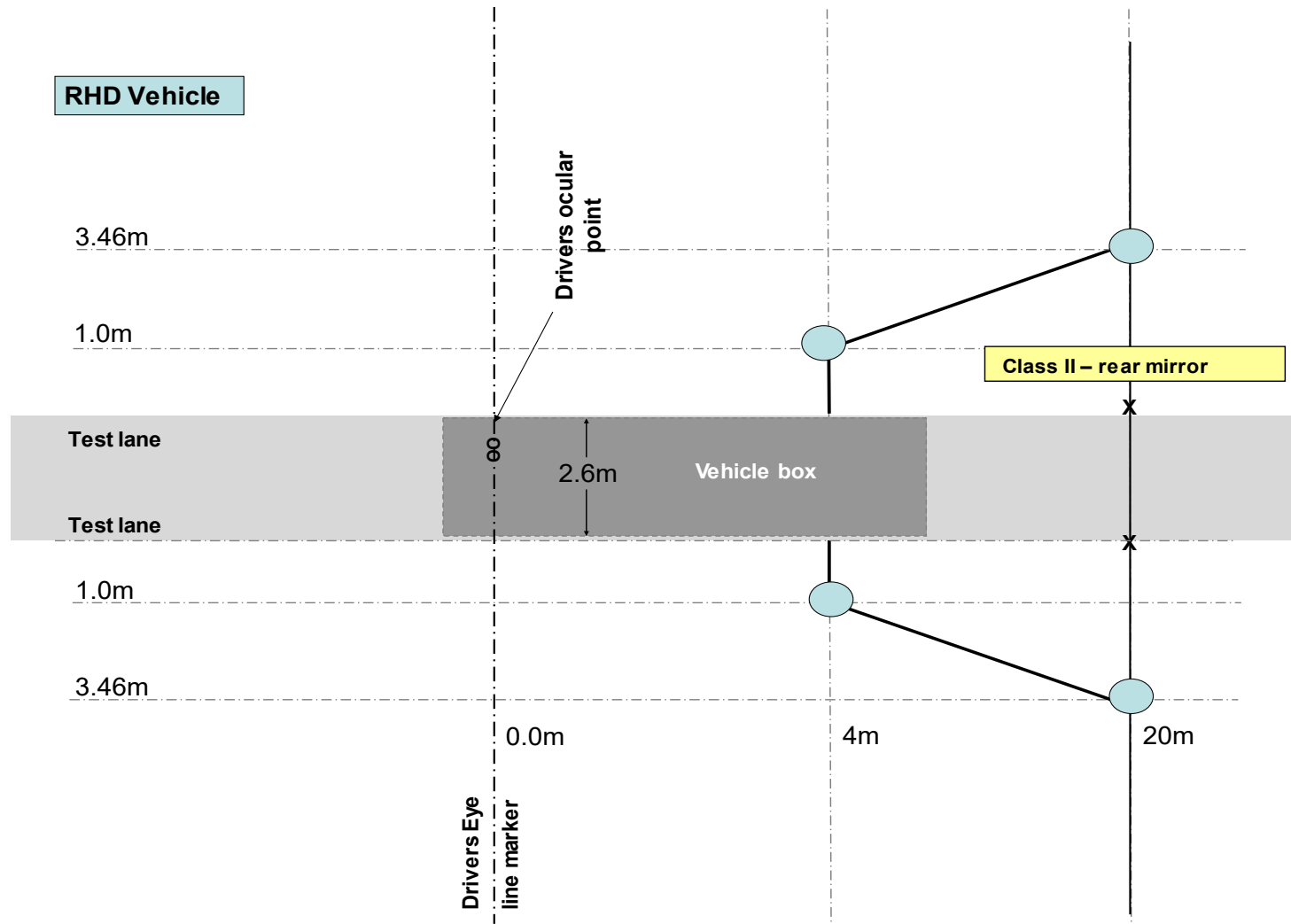
08 Indirect Vision

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>The vehicle must be fitted with appropriate Indirect Vision Devices that enable the driver an adequate view to the rear.- Alternatively, vehicles manufactured after 1st April 2016 may be equipped with a camera monitor system (CMS) that has full approval to UNECE Regulation 46.04. These systems generally replace the Class II and Class IV mirrors.</p> <p>Compliance can be demonstrated by component approval or the presence of approval marks (for unmodified vehicles and/or cabs).</p> <p>In the case of an Armoured vehicle, exemption from one or more of the provisions is permitted where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the Approval Authority that the special purpose of the vehicle makes it impossible to fully comply.</p> <p>Note 1: Mirror security should be such that wind deflection when the vehicle is driven at normal road speeds will not cause the field of view to change. It should also be mounted so that the mirror cannot vibrate and cause the driver to misinterpret the image.</p> <p>Note 2: Where a valid approval or test report is available which covers the vehicle in its finished state, a field of view check is not required.</p> <p>Note 3: This does not apply to mirrors which are marked as multi-class in addition to V or VI.</p> | <p>Installation check for mirrors only</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle must have all obligatory mirrors or indirect vision devices fitted (see Table 1). 2. All mirrors must be securely attached to the vehicle (see Note 1). 3. All obligatory mirrors must bear an acceptable European approval mark ('E' or 'e'). 4. All obligatory mirrors must bear the appropriate class type (see Table 1). 5. All mirrors must be adjustable. 6. All obligatory mirrors must meet the field of view requirements (see Note 2 and Figure 1). 7. If a class V or VI mirror is mounted then regardless of their position after adjustment, no part of these mirrors or their holders must be less than 2 m from the ground (see Note 3). 8. Exterior mirrors shall be visible through the side windows or through the portion of the windscreen that is swept by the windscreen wiper (see Note 4). <p>Camera Monitor Systems</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9. Camera Monitor System installations must be accompanied by acceptable evidence of approval to UNECE Regulation 46.04 |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | |
|--|--|-----------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <p>Note 4: For design reasons, the provisions relating the side window and cleaned part of the windscreen shall not apply to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • exterior mirrors on the passenger side; • Class VI mirrors | <p>Table 1</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Class of Mirror</th> <th>Obligatory Fitment to Vehicle</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Side Exterior (Class II)</td> <td>Drivers Side and Passenger Side</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Class of Mirror | Obligatory Fitment to Vehicle | Side Exterior (Class II) | Drivers Side and Passenger Side |
| Class of Mirror | Obligatory Fitment to Vehicle | | | | |
| Side Exterior (Class II) | Drivers Side and Passenger Side | | | | |

Figure 1



Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 10/04/2018 | Insert new MOI & note 3 and link to RS7 |
| 3 | 01/09/2020 | Provide for the use of CMS |
| 4 | 15/04/2024 | Remove Note 5 and add the reference of CMS requirements to new RS 9 to align with the N2 N3 IVA Inspection Manual. Improve format of Figure 1 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

09 Braking

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| Ensure that the vehicle as presented has satisfactory evidence of compliance to the required standard. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence of compliance with the required standard for "Braking". |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/04/2010 | Add number to the RS (missing) |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Change text in application box |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

10 Electromagnetic Compatibility

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>Ensure the vehicle has satisfactory evidence of compliance to the required standard and has not been modified such to invalidate the approval.</p> <p>Note 1: This only applies to equipment that is likely to be used when the vehicle is being driven.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence of compliance with the required standard for “EMC”.<li>2. Where any additional equipment has been installed, a declaration supplied by the Manufacturer/applicant, confirming compliance of the additional items must be presented (see Note 1). |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 10/04/2018 | Amend RS2 & add Note 1 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

13 Anti – Theft / Immobiliser / Alarm

Application: All Vehicles (Optional Fitment)

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>If the vehicle is fitted with a mechanical anti-theft device, an electronic immobiliser, or an alarm system (including panic alarm) The system or systems must comply with this section.</p> <p>Note 1: A “Category 1” installation refers to an immobiliser and an alarm. “Category 2” installation refers to an immobiliser only.</p> <p>Ensure that the vehicle is accompanied by documentary evidence of compliance for a category 1 or 2 installation as appropriate.</p> <p>Evidence of compliance must be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Documentary evidence from a test laboratory. • Documentary evidence from the chassis manufacturer. • An original certificate of installation from a Mobile Electronics and Security Federation (MESF) accredited installer. <p>Note 2: An optional panic alarm not forming part of an alarm system is not required to meet RS4.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where an anti-theft device incorporates a mechanical part that acts upon a system used to control the vehicle; <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. It must deactivate before the engine can be started. b. It must be deactivated while the engine is running. c. It must have a actuation which is a distinct and separate function from that of stopping the engine. d. It must not operate on any part of the braking system. 2 If fitted to the Vehicle, an Immobiliser must be accompanied by evidence of compliance (see Note 1). 3 If fitted to the Vehicle, an Alarm must be accompanied by evidence of compliance (see Note 1). 4 If fitted to the Vehicle, a Panic Alarm must be accompanied by evidence of compliance (see Notes 1 & 2). |

Anti – Theft / Immobiliser / Alarm 13

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/10/2010 | Add Thatcham Recognised Installer installation report to list of acceptable evidence |
| 3 | 30/11/2011 | Remove VSIB from list of acceptable evidence |
| 4 | 10/04/2018 | Amend Note 2 |
| 5 | 01/09/2020 | Remove acceptance of TRI |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

15 Seat Strength

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>The requirements of this section can be deemed to be met where the vehicle is presented with evidence of :-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> An approval to the requirements of Directive 74/408 as last amended by 2005/39/EC or the requirements of UNECE Regulation 17.06 or 80.01 or a test report to the technical provisions of the Directives/Regulations quoted above <p>and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> subject to a random check that the documentation matches the vehicle presented, including seat type. <p>Seats designed for dual function as sleeper bunks should be assessed in the seating mode only.</p> <p>Seats meeting requirements for M1 seats are acceptable.</p> <p>Head restraints can either form part of the seat itself, or be detachable and adjustable for height.</p> <p>Note 1: This inspection does not apply to any seating intended solely for use while the vehicle is stationary and any such seats must be clearly identified to users by means of a pictogram or a sign with appropriate text.</p> <p>Note 2: In respect of a seat that comprises of a “lift-out” backrest and/or squab it will be considered secure providing, when in the operational position, it is located such that there no possibility of accidental lateral or longitudinal movement within the vehicle.</p> | <p>All Seats</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All seats must be adequate in strength and securely mounted to a load bearing part of the structure, or have adequate support to spread the load of the seat mounting if attached to a non-metallic floor pan separate from the chassis (see Notes 1, 2, & 3). 2. Where seats incorporate seat belt anchorages the seat must be approved to at least the category of vehicle to which they are fitted. 3. All seat mountings must be of adequate strength to support the loads likely to be imposed (see Notes 1 & 3). 4. Each moveable seat, seat back adjustment and seat displacement system must incorporate an automatic locking system which operates in all positions provided for normal use (see Notes 1 & 4). 5. All seats which can be tipped forward or have fold-down backs must lock automatically in the normal (see Notes 1 & 4). 6. Where seats are intended for use only when the vehicle is not being driven on public roads, the seats must be accompanied by a pictogram or sign clearly indicating that the seat is not to be used whilst the vehicle is in motion. 7. For seating positions where the seat belt anchorages are not mounted on the seat, but are fixed directly to the floor or other body structure, the vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence of |

Seat Strength 15

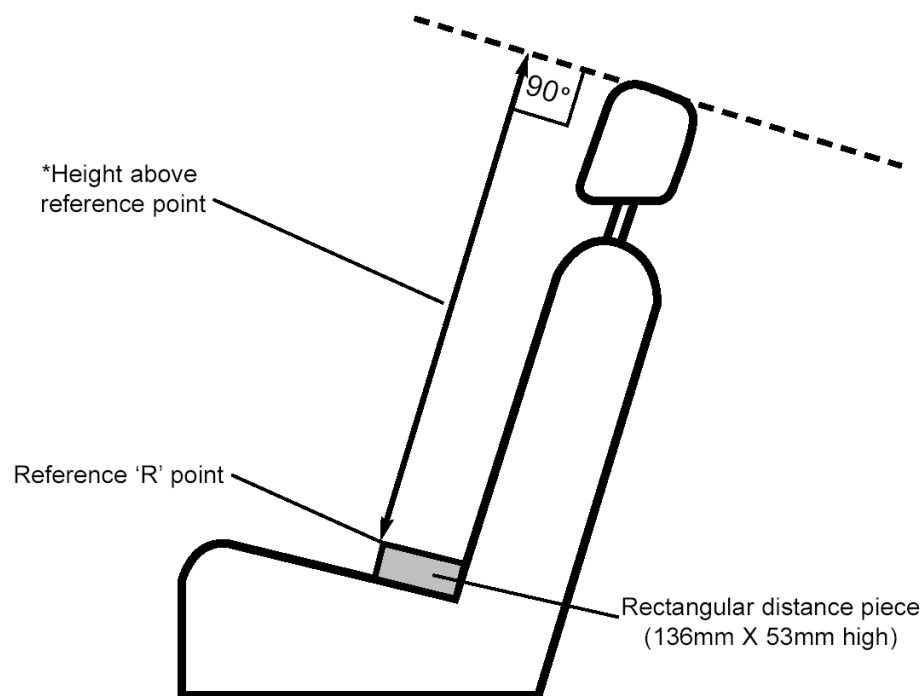
| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>Note 3: On a seat to which a seat belt is mounted (integral seat belt) consideration must be given to the seat mounting as they are now considered to be seat belt anchorages. The Standards, and guidance on the types of construction acceptable for this type of seat are found in section 19 (Seat Belt Anchorages).</p> <p>Note 4: A seat/seat back INERTIA locking device is acceptable, i.e. a device that operates during the deceleration of the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 5: Documentary evidence (approval or test report) of compliance with Appendix 2 to UNECE Regulation 17.06, Appendix 2 to Regulation 80.01 or Appendix 2 to Annex III of Directive 74/408 as last amended by 2005/39/EC, must be provided.(These requirements are for the seat belt anchorage only).</p> <p>Note 6: Height adjustable head restraints must achieve this dimension at a position between the highest and lowest positions to which adjustment is possible. There should also not be any in use position resulting in a height of less than 700mm.</p> <p>Note 7: This does not apply to any approved seats or vehicles produced by major manufacturers where the original seats have not been modified.</p> <p>Note 8: Where optional headrests are fitted to seats other than outboard front seats only RS12 – 14 apply.</p> | <p>compliance with the required standard for seat belt anchorages (see Note 5).</p> <p>8. Seats with integral seat belts fitted must have anchorages that comply with section 19 (Seat Belt Anchorages).</p> <p>Head Restraints</p> <p>M2 with a maximum mass not exceeding 3500kg</p> <p>9. A system of padded head restraint must be fitted on every outboard front seat.</p> <p>10. For outboard front seats, the height of the top of the head restraint above the R point must be at least 700mm (see Notes 6 & 7 and Annex 1).</p> <p>11. The head restraint must be at least 85 mm wide each side of the vertical centre line of the seat and at least 100mm high.</p> <p>12. The head restraint must be securely attached to the seat (see Note 8).</p> <p>13. The head restraint must not have any roughness or sharp edges likely to increase the risk of severity of injury (see Note 8).</p> <p>14. The padding of the head restraint must be sufficient so as to prevent any contact by a head with any of the internal hard parts of the head restraint (see Note 8).</p> |

Seat Strength 15

Annex 1

Seat reference point is measured with the seat in its rearmost and lowest position as well as:

- a. In the case of a seat with an adjustable back rest, the measurements should be made with the seat back rest adjusted to an angle of 25°, with the assessment tool being parallel to the centre line of the seat back rest
- b. In the case of a seat with a fixed back rest, the assessment tool being parallel to the centre line of the seat back rest up to a maximum of 25° (irrespective if the fixed seat back is inclined more than 25°).



Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 22/01/2010 | Reduce the maximum height to mirror the M1 manual + add note 3 |
| 3 | 03/05/2011 | Add Annex 1, Link notes and annex to Required Standards |
| 4 | 30/11/2011 | Remove the requirement of documentary evidence for seat strength, renumber Standards and Notes |
| 5 | 30/04/2012 | Reword Note 1, add Note 4 and reorganise standards |
| 6 | 11/02/2013 | Insert new paragraph in Mol |
| 7 | 10/04/2018 | Section rewrite & align with N manual |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

17 Speedometer and Reverse Gear

Application: All Vehicles having a maximum speed exceeding 25mph

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>A vehicle must indicate an accurate speed to the driver at all times and the vehicle must be capable of travelling in a rearward direction under its own power.</p> <p>A Speedometer may be digital or a dial instrument.</p> <p>Note 1: Modular and Digital Tachograph's do not provide adequate visual indication of speed.</p> <p>Note 2: Where the accuracy of the device is in question, it will be necessary for the applicant to provide compliance.</p> <p>Note 3: Imperial (mph) markings are not required on Tachograph dial face.</p> <p>Note 4: The first marked increment may be at 0 mph but must not exceed 20 mph.</p> <p>Note 5: Vehicle maximum design speed (without the use of a speed limiting device) shall be in the form of vehicle specific documentary evidence from the vehicle manufacturer.</p> <p>Note 6: "Reverse Gear" is a device used to propel the vehicle in a rearwards direction under its own power. This does not have to be in the gearbox, it may be a separate component i.e. electric motor.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle must be fitted with an Analogue Tachograph or a Speedometer capable of accurately indicating the speed of the vehicle (see Notes 1 & 2). 2. The tachograph or speedometer must be capable of being read at all times of the day or night. 3. Imperial (mph) and metric (km/h) units must be permanently marked on the dial face (see Note 3). 4. The "rest" position for the needle must lie either on or below the first marked increment (see Note 4). <p>If an analogue tachograph is not fitted then:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. A speedometer must be fitted and be capable of indicating the vehicle speed in miles per hour (mph) and kilometres per hour (km/h) at uniform intervals not exceeding 20mph for all speeds up to the maximum design speed of the vehicle (see Note 5). <p>Reverse gear</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. The vehicle must have a reverse gear, which can be selected from the driving position and operates (see Note 6). |

Speedometer and Reverse Gear 17

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|-----------------|-------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/10/2010 | Remove and renumber Required Standards |
| 3 | 03/05/2011 | Add text to MOI regarding the design speed of the vehicle |
| 4 | 03/11/2012 | Insert new note 3 linked to RS4 |
| 5 | 10/04/2018 | Section rewrite align with N manual |
| 6 | 01/09/2020 | Update MOI and correct abbreviations |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

18 Statutory Plates

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>All vehicles must be provided with a manufacturer’s plate.</p> <p>Legislation places no restriction on the material from which the plate is made. The purpose of the plate is to impart information rather than to act as a proof of identity.</p> <p>Check that the manufacturer’s plate (in the case of a multistage build, one for each stage) complies with the Required Standards. It would be helpful if separate plates are fitted in close proximity to each other, but this is not mandatory for vehicles covered by this manual.</p> <p>Visually check that the characters used for the Manufacturers Plate and Vehicle Identification Number complies (VIN) to the required standards.</p> <p>Where the vehicle is subject to a multistage build, a plate is required on completion of each stage as appropriate, every plate fitted must display the same VIN as displayed on the chassis, the weight information is only necessary on the chassis manufacturer’s plate or on a converters plate if they have altered those weights with any modification.</p> <p>The manufacturer may give additional information. The approval number and build stage number may be listed below the manufacturers name and the number of axles may be listed underneath the VIN number. Any other information must be outside a clearly marked rectangle which shall enclose only the listed information.</p> | <p><u>Manufacturer’s VIN Plate</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle must be fitted with a manufacturer’s plate, in a conspicuous and readily accessible position. 2. A manufacturer’s plate must be fitted for each stage of a multistage build. 3. The manufacturer’s plate(s) must be made of a durable material. 4. All plate(s) must be indelibly marked with the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) which matches the number marked into the vehicle structure (see Note 1). 5. The manufacturer’s plate(s) must be securely attached to a part of the vehicle that will not be replaced through normal use (see Note 2). 6. The manufacturer’s plate(s) must show the required information, in the correct order inside a clearly marked rectangle. See Annex 1. 7. The Vehicle Identification number on the manufacturer’s plate must be marked in characters at least 4mm high. 8. The characters on the manufacturer’s plate (with the exception of the Vehicle Identification Number) must be at least 2mm high. <p><u>Permanent Vehicle Identification Number</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9. The VIN must be marked on the chassis, frame, or other similar structure on the right hand side of the vehicle (viewed from the rear). |

Statutory Plates 18

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>The identification number of the base vehicle (VIN) prescribed by Directive 76/114/EEC shall be retained during all the subsequent stages of the type-approval process to ensure the 'traceability' of the process.</p> <p>However, at the final stage of completion, the manufacturer concerned by this stage may replace, in agreement with the approval authority, the first and second sections of the vehicle identification number with their own vehicle manufacturer code and the vehicle identification code if, and only if, the vehicle has to be registered under his own trade name. In such a case, the complete vehicle identification number of the base vehicle must not be deleted.</p> <p>All vehicles must have a vehicle identification number marked onto the chassis by hammering, stamping or similar so that the vehicle can be clearly identified.</p> <p>Note 1: For markings to be considered 'indelible' they should be unlikely to become disfigured or obliterated during the life of the trailer. Whilst stamping or engraving is preferable it is possible to accept a printed or painted plate providing it has been treated in such a way that it is most unlikely that essential information would be obliterated or defaced during the normal life of the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 2: 'Securely attached' means screwed, bolted, riveted, or otherwise fixed such that it is not likely to become displaced during the life of the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 3: As an exception, for technical reasons, it may also be marked on two lines. However, in this case no section may be divided between the two lines. The beginning and end of each line must be indicated by a symbol which is neither an Arabic numeral nor a roman capital letter, and which cannot be confused with either. (First section would be 3 characters in length, second</p> | <p>10. The VIN must be placed in a clearly visible and accessible position by a method such as hammering or stamping so that it cannot be obliterated or deteriorate.</p> <p>11. The VIN number must consist of 17 digits with the information shown in a single line (see Notes 3 & 4).</p> <p>12. Capital letters and numerals must be used for the VIN.</p> <p>13. There must not be any gaps between the characters for the VIN or unique vehicle identifier number shown on the manufacturer's plate or stamped into the vehicle (see Note 4).</p> <p>14. The characters used for the VIN number stamped into the chassis, frame or other similar structure must be at least 7mm high.</p> <p>15. Use of the letter I, the letter O, the letter Q, dashes, asterisks and other special signs are not permitted.</p> <p><u>Where the VIN has been changed in agreement with the Approval Authority</u></p> <p>16. Evidence of the agreement with the approval authority must be provided.</p> <p>17. The original complete vehicle identification number of the base vehicle must be present on the chassis.</p> <p>18. The complete new VIN must be stamped on the chassis as near as possible to the original VIN.</p> <p>19. The last eight characters of the new VIN must be identical to the last eight characters of the base vehicle VIN.</p> <p>20. The vehicle must be fitted with a manufacturer's plate, in a conspicuous and readily accessible position.</p> |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|-------------------|
| <p>section would be 6 characters in length and the last section would be 8 characters in length).</p> <p>Note 4: The spacing of characters must be such that no additional characters could be added at a later date.</p> | |

Annex 1

Manufacturers Plate (see Notes 1, 2,3 & 4)

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| DVSA MOTORS INC | |
| e11*2007/46*0291*02 | |
| SA9A3ACTBE321654 | |
| 22000Kg | 25500Kg |
| 23500kg | 29000kg |
| 7000Kg | 7500Kg |
| 8000Kg | 9000Kg |
| 8000Kg | 9000Kg |

Name of Manufacturer

Approval number and/or Build Stage number (If applicable)

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Maximum permitted laden mass of vehicle

Maximum permitted laden mass for the combination where the vehicle is used for towing (see **Note 5**)

Maximum permitted laden road mass for each axle, listed in order from front to rear

Note 1: Where the vehicle is subject to a multistage build, a plate is required on completion of each stage as appropriate, every plate fitted must display the same VIN as displayed on the chassis, the weight information is only necessary on the chassis manufacturer’s plate or on a converters plate if they have altered those weights with any modification

Note 2: For markings to be considered 'indelible' they should be unlikely to become disfigured or obliterated during the life of the vehicle. Whilst stamping or engraving is preferable it is possible to accept a printed or painted plate providing it has been treated in such a way that it is most unlikely that essential information would be obliterated or defaced during the normal life of the vehicle.

Note 3: The spacing of characters must be such that no additional characters could be added at a later date.

Note 4: If any of the technically permissible masses are higher than the masses permitted in GB and NI for a vehicle or axle (see Annex 1 for details of the maximum masses permitted in GB and NI), then there should be 2 columns for masses - in the left hand column the maximum permitted mass in GB/NI, and in the right hand column, the technically permissible mass.

This does not apply to a vehicle issued with a Plating certificate under the Goods Vehicles (Plating and Testing) Regulations 1988 where only one column, giving the technically permissible masses, is permitted. (See Section 48 Masses and Dimensions for requirements for a plating certificate).

Note 5: Only required to be displayed on applicable vehicles, i.e.: designed to allow towing.

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/10/2010 | Add new note and reorder notes, add RS 15, 16 & 17 |
| 3 | 03/05/2011 | Add new RS15 and renumber remaining standards |
| 4 | 30/11/2011 | Add new note 3 and link to RS 6 , add new note 4 and link to Table in RS 6, renumber remaining notes |
| 5 | 30/04/2012 | Add text 'approval number and build stage number' to Mol paragraph 5 |
| 6 | 11/02/2013 | Amend Mol paragraph 5 and RS12 and insert new RS13. |
| 7 | 10/04/2018 | Section Rewrite, remove weights table |
| 8 | 01/09/2020 | Additional clarification regarding separate plates. |
| | | |
| | | |

19 Seat Belt Anchorages

Application: All Vehicles with seat belts fitted

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>Ensure that the vehicle as presented has satisfactory evidence of compliance to the required standard Satisfactory Evidence must be provided in the form of:</p> <p>An Approval or A test report to the requirements of the approval from a approval authority or recognised test organisation.</p> <p>Seats designed for dual function as sleeper bunks should be assessed in the seating mode only.</p> <p>Note 1: Prison vehicles - Vehicles constructed or adapted for the secure transport of prisoners are not required to be fitted with seat belts, except for the driver’s and any front passenger’s seat. However, seat belt anchorage points are mandatory for all seating positions.</p> <p>Note 2: An M3 approval / test will not be suitable for use in an M2 vehicle, as the ‘pull test’ requirements for an M3 vehicle are notably less.</p> <p>Note 3: If attached to a thin metal floor, adequate support to spread the load of the anchorage is required, e.g. spreader plates of at least 75mm x 75mm x 4mm mild steel fitted under the floor, of the legs closest to the rear of the vehicle and between the leg and the top of the floor surface for the leg closest to the front of the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 4: Seats may vary by only 10 degrees from either the forward or rearward facing direction before they become side facing.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. For vehicles with seat belts fitted to secure passengers in forward or rearward facing seats, the vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence of compliance with the required standard for “Seat belt anchorages” (see Notes 1 & 2). 2. For vehicles with seat belts fitted to secure passengers in Side Facing Seats, the belt anchorage points, including the seat anchorage for belts mounted directly to a seat, must be securely attached to the vehicle structure, or other obvious suitable load bearing parts of the vehicle (see Notes 3 & 4). |

Seat Belt Anchorages 19

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 22/01/2010 | Add Note 3 and RS 2 |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Reword MOI |
| 4 | 03/05/2011 | Link notes 1 & 2 to RS1 |
| 5 | 11/02/2013 | Insert new paragraph in MOI |
| 6 | 01/07/2018 | Add Note 4 Ref. side facing seats |
| 7 | 01/09/2020 | Link Note 4 to RS2 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

20 Installation of Lights

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>The examiner will perform a visual check of all lamps and reflectors fitted to the vehicle for the correct colour, light visible to the front or rear and that no light emitting surfaces are obscured.</p> <p>Light emitted from interior signage, e.g. ‘Bus Stopping’ sign, is not included in the assessment when determining the colour of light showing to the front or rear.</p> <p>Lamp/reflector lateral position is measured from the extreme outer edge of the vehicle (disregarding the deflected part of the tyre walls immediately above the point of contact with the ground, mirrors, lamps, and reflectors) to the edge of the illuminated area (or reflective surface on a reflector) nearest that side of the vehicle.</p> <p>Lamp/reflector vertical position is measured from the ground;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the case of the minimum height to the lower edge of the illuminated area (reflective surface on a reflector). • In the case of the maximum height to the top edge of the illuminated area (reflective surface on a reflector). • In the case of lamp separation, refer to Figure 5. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle must be fitted with lamps or retro reflective material only capable of showing a white light to the front except for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • an amber light from a direction indicator • a yellow light from a front fog lamp • an amber light from a side marker light • emergency vehicles only, a blue light from a warning lamp or beacon • a red light from a rearmost side marker or rear position lamp • light from destination board 2. The vehicle must be fitted with lamps or retro reflective material only capable of showing a red light to the rear except for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • an amber light from a direction indicator • a white light from a work lamp, reversing lamp, interior lamp, or a registration plate lamp • a yellow light from a rear registration plate • an amber light from a side marker light • emergency vehicles only, a blue light from a warning lamp or beacon. • light from destination board 3. The operation of any lamp must not affect any other lamp or be affected by the operation of any other lamp, unless specifically designed to do so. |

Installation of Lights 20

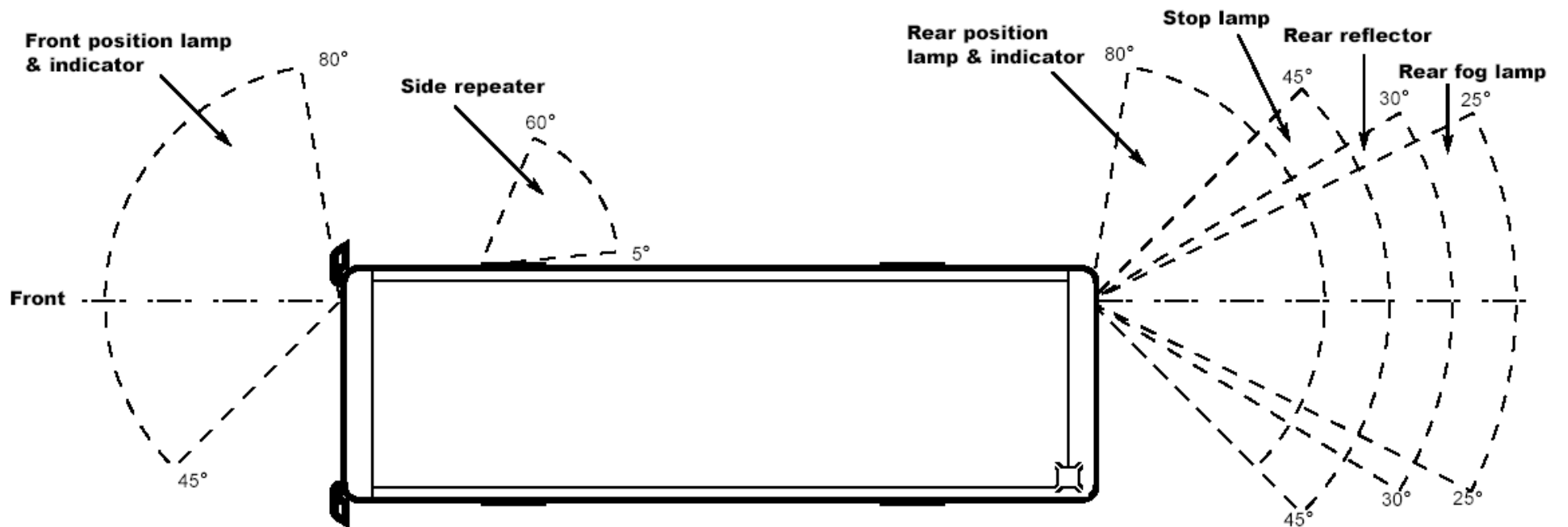
| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>For the purposes of the test lamps that are intended to illuminate the road forward of the vehicle are considered to be either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) main beam headlamps (including spot lamps and driving lamps) b) dipped beam headlamps, or c) front fog lamps. <p>If workshop tools or equipment are required to reinstate the function of a lamp that 'lamp' should be considered not 'fitted'. If a stop lamp meets the criteria of an optional lamp and is 'fitted', i.e. connected it must operate.</p> <p>Two or more lamps (see Figure 4), whether identical or not, having the same function and emitting light of the same colour are considered to be one lamp if the aggregate illuminated area of the lamps occupies 60% or more of the area of the smallest rectangle circumscribing those illuminated areas.</p> <p>Note 1 This does not apply to rear retro reflectors which must be visible at all times.</p> <p>Note 2 Fixed position of a movable component means the stable or natural rest position(s) of the movable component which can be specified by the manufacturer, whether locked or not.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. All lamps and reflectors must be securely fitted to the vehicle and not move by swivelling, deflecting, or otherwise while the vehicle is in motion, except for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • any lamp or reflector which by design can be deflected to the side with the movement of the front wheel or wheels of the vehicle when turned for the purpose of steering the vehicle • a headlamp for adjustment or dipping of the beam • a headlamp which can be retracted or concealed • a work lamp, used to illuminate a working area or the scene of an accident, breakdown, or road works in the vicinity of the vehicle to which it is fitted. 5. All obligatory and optional lamps, reflectors and rear markers must be fitted to their correct orientation. 6. When every door, tailgate, boot lid, or other movable part is in the fixed open position (any movable component, with or without a light-signalling device installed on it, in any fixed position (see Note 2) different from the 'normal position of use') each of the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • front and rear position lamps • front and rear indicators • rear retro reflectors <p>must fulfil one of the following conditions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. half (50%) of the apparent surface of the lamp/reflector is visible from directly in front of/behind (as appropriate) the vehicle, or b. additional fully visible lamp(s) / reflector(s) satisfying all requirements for the above lamps are activated / visible, or c. a notice in the vehicle must inform the user that in certain positions of the movable components, other road users should be warned of the presence of the vehicle on the road (e.g. by laying out a warning triangle) (see Note 1). |

Installation of Lights 20

Figure 1

Horizontal Angles of Visibility

Each lamp and reflector must be positioned such as to provide an “apparent surface”. At least 50% of the “apparent surface” of each lamp or reflector must be visible from any point within the relevant angles.



Installation of Lights 20

Figure 2**Vertical Angles of Visibility**

Each lamp and reflector must be positioned such as to provide an “apparent surface”. At least 50% of the “apparent surface” of each lamp or reflector must be visible from any point within the relevant angles.

Front Position Lamps and Indicators (including Side Repeaters)

‘a’ = less than 750mm above ground level.

‘b’ = 750mm or more above ground level.

‘c’ = Rear position lamps and Stop lamps 1500mm or more above ground level. Indicators and Rear reflectors 750mm or more above ground level.

‘d’ = Rear position lamps and Stop lamps less than 1500mm above ground level.

‘e’ = Rear position lamps, Stop lamps, Indicators and Rear reflectors less than 750mm above ground level.

‘f’ = Rear fog lamps.

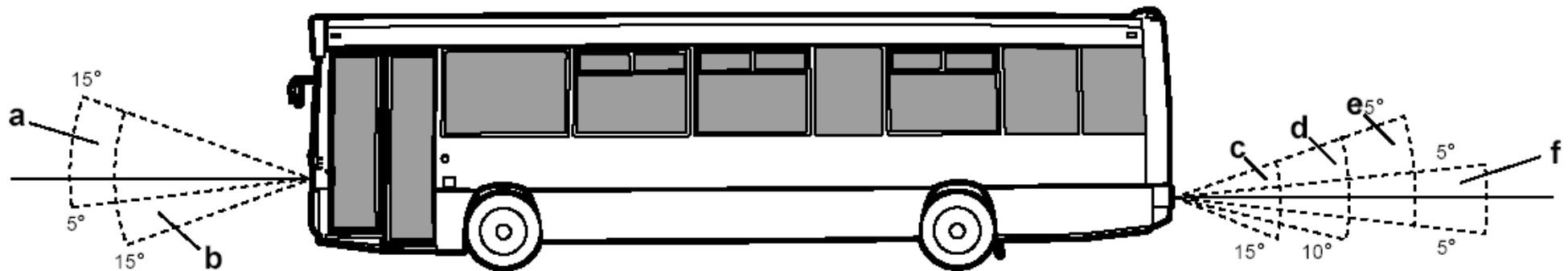
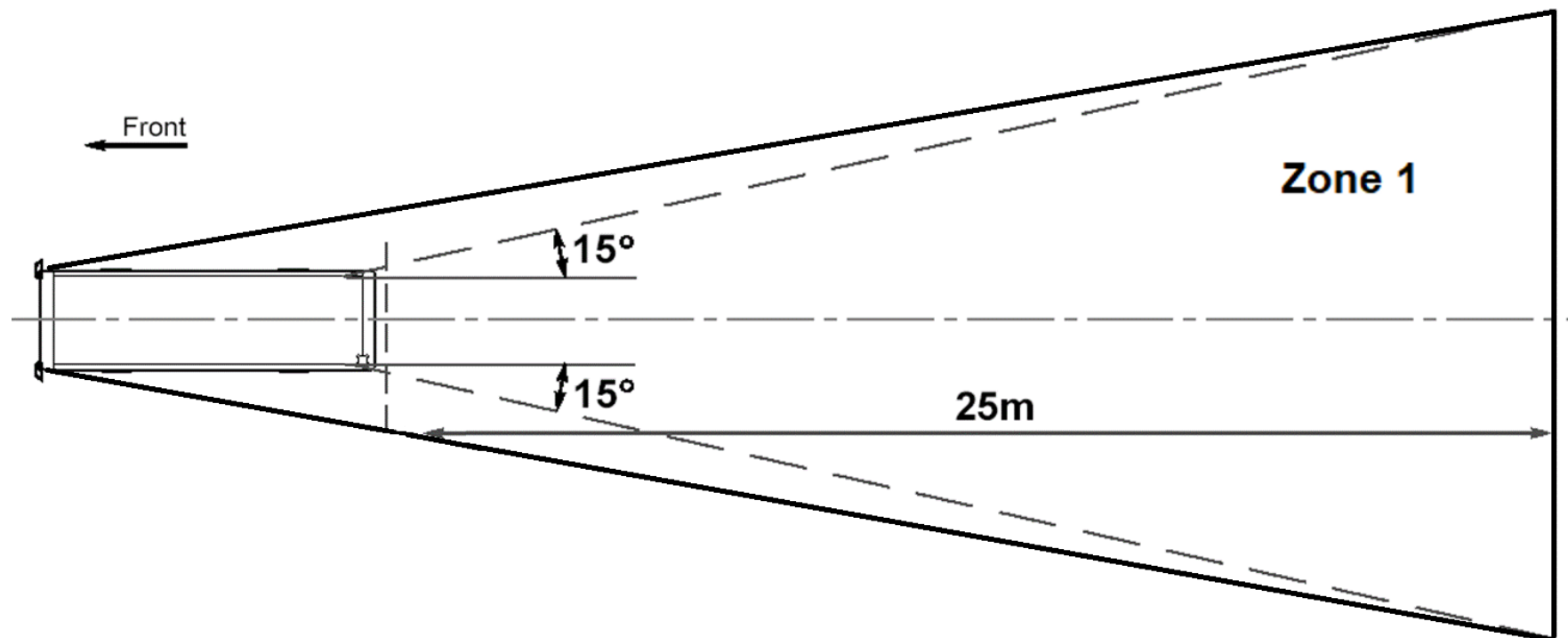


Figure 3

“To the rear” of the vehicle means:

If viewed from an observer moving within an area shown in the diagram below (Zone 1), the sides of which are at an angle of 15 degrees out from the extreme outer edge of the vehicle starting from the rear corner and extending up to 25m from the rear of the vehicle (measured along the vehicle longitudinal), no light other than a red light (with the exception of amber light from a direction indicator, white light from a work lamp, reversing lamp, or a registration plate lamp or yellow light from a registration plate lamp) is permitted to be visible in this area.



Installation of Lights 20

Figure 3a

“To the front” of the vehicle means:

If viewed from an observer moving within an area shown in the diagram below (Zone 2), the sides of which are at an angle of 15 degrees out from the extreme outer edge of the vehicle starting from the front corner and extending up to **25m** from the front of the vehicle (measured along the vehicle longitudinal), no light other than a white light (with the exception of an amber light from a direction indicator, an amber light from a hazard beacon/warning lamp, a yellow light from a front fog lamp, a yellow light from a front end outline marker lamp, an amber light from a side marker light, a red light from a rearmost side marker or rear position lamp; and emergency vehicles only, a blue light from a warning lamp or beacon) is permitted to be visible in this area.

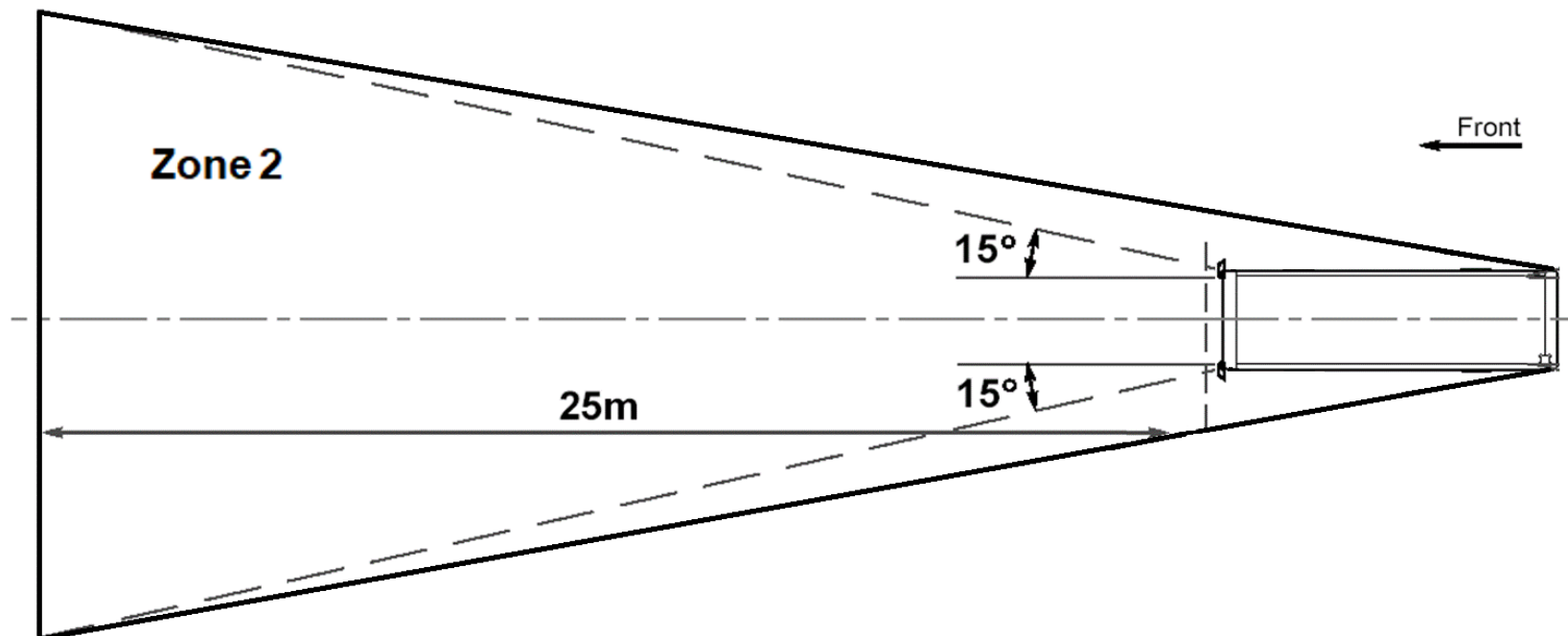
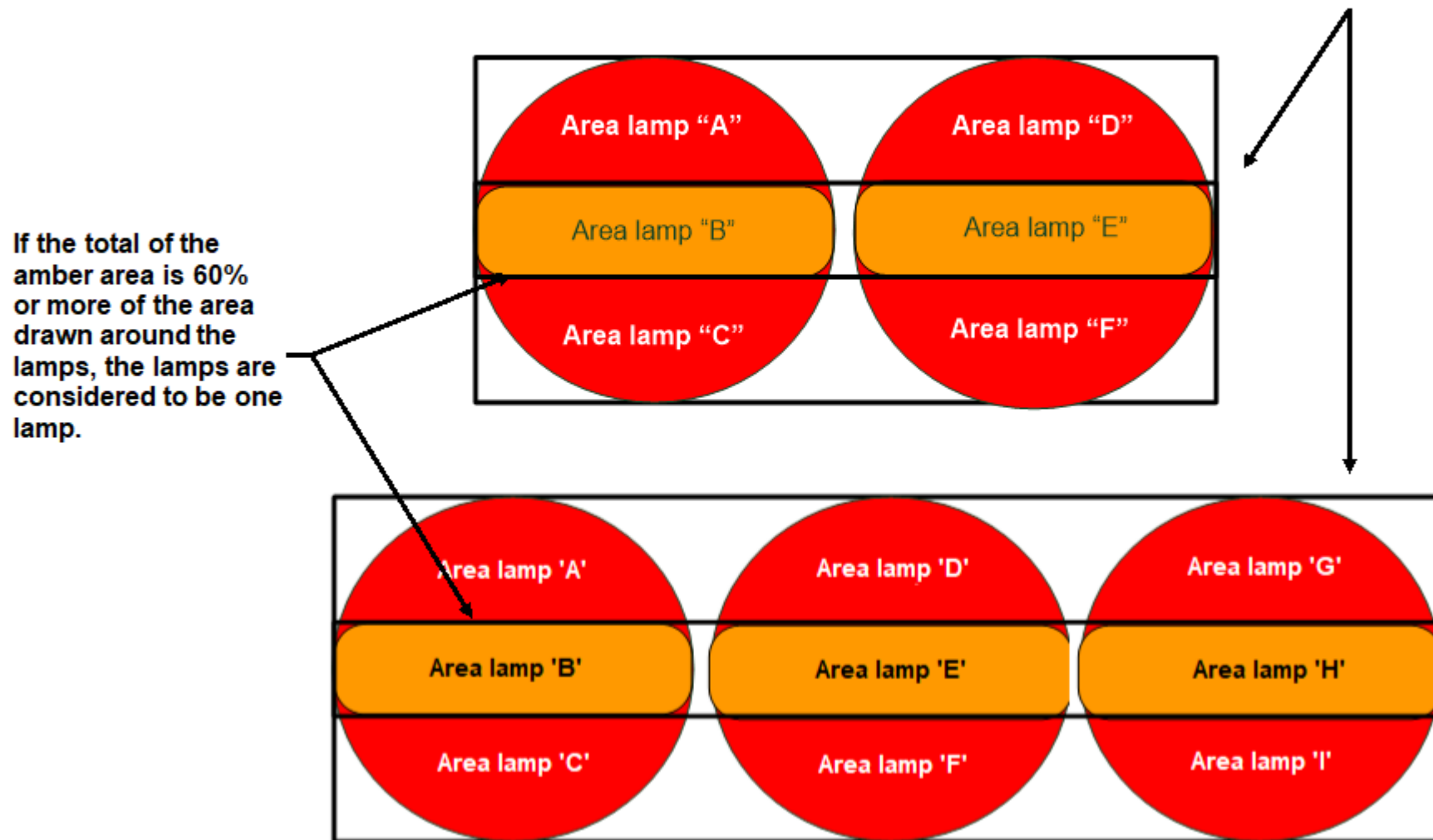


Figure 4

If the total of the red area is 60% or more of the area drawn around the lamps, the lamps are considered to be one lamp.



If the total of the amber area is 60% or more of the area drawn around the lamps, the lamps are considered to be one lamp.

Figure 4a

If the total of area "A" added to area "B" is 60% or more of the area drawn around the lamps, the lamps are considered to be one lamp.

Smallest rectangle that can be drawn around the two areas "A" and "B"

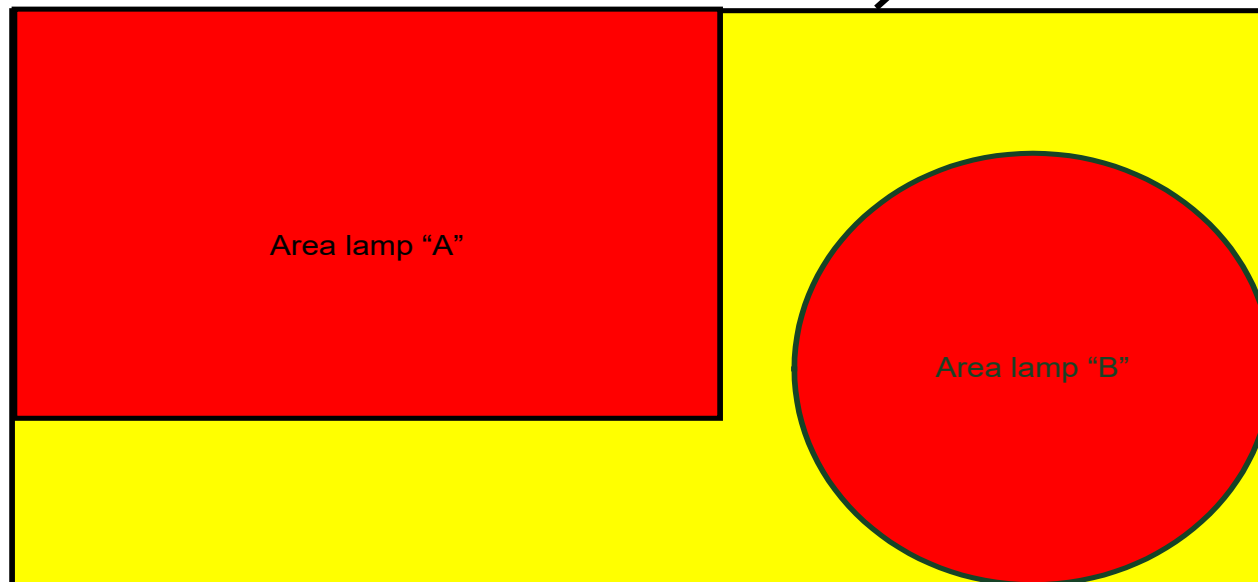
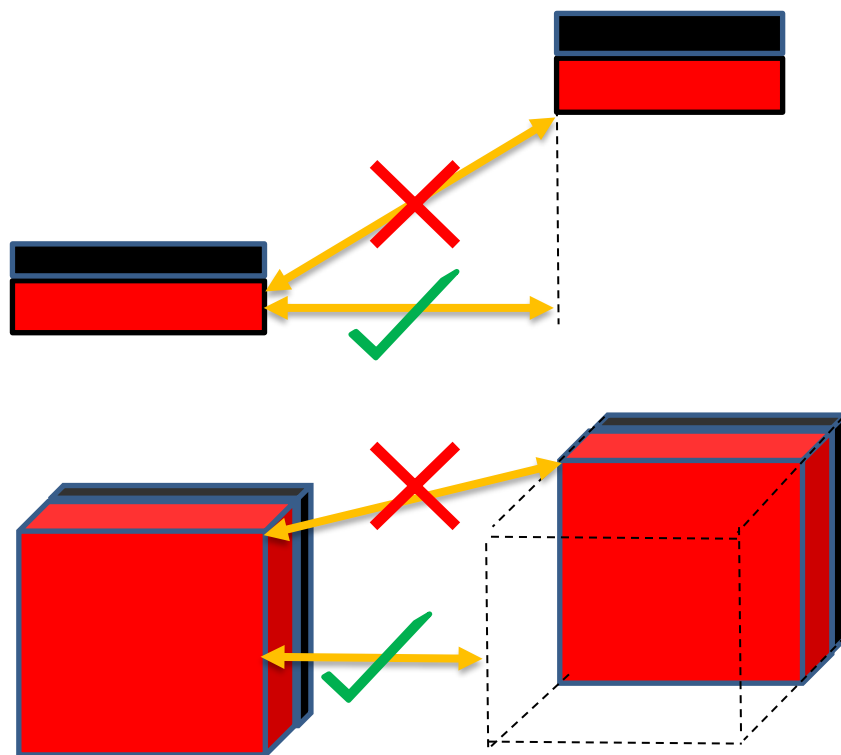


Figure 5

The methodology for assessing lamp separation



Measuring lamp separation viewed in plan form (from above).

Measuring the same lamp separation viewed in end elevation (directly behind the vehicle)

Reg 48.03 EOM (6.13.9) requirements:

The position of an end outline marker lamp in relation to corresponding position lamp shall be such that the distance between the projections on a transverse vertical plane of the points nearest to one another on the apparent surfaces in the direction of the respective reference axes of the two lamps considered is not less than 200 mm.

Note: Check each lamp against its specified separation dimension in its section of the manual. This applies equally to Conspicuity Markings

Installation of Lights 20

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Add a new RS 03 and renumber section |
| 3 | 22/01/2010 | Reflectors removed from RS 6 |
| 4 | 03/05/2011 | Add destination Boards to RS 1 and 2 |
| 5 | 10/04/2018 | Insert exemption in Mol for interior signage and amend note 3, insert two new paragraphs in Mol & new Figure 4 |
| 6 | 01/09/2020 | Add new statement in Mol and insert new Figure 5 |
| 7 | 15/04/2024 | Revise RS1 to Include allowance of red light from front & Revise Fig 3 to define zone area, and insertion of Figure 3a diagram and associated text to clarify 'view to the front and rear' (TSE IVA M2 & M3 020 005) Revision of Figure 4 to align with other IVA manuals. Revise RS6 to clarify 'fixed open position' & New Note 2 referenced from RS6. (TSE IVA M2 & M3 020 002). Revise MOI to clarify consideration of tyres. (TSE IVA M2M3 020 006) |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

21 Retro Reflectors

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Carry out a visual check of all retro reflectors fitted to the vehicle for colour, number, approval markings and correct positioning.</p> <p>Note 1 Geometric angles of visibility and positional requirements are not required for all optional reflectors.</p> | <p>Reflectors</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All reflectors must be 'e' or 'E' marked and where applicable, bear the appropriate identity marking as listed in Table 1. 2. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (Table 1). 3. The correct colour must be fitted to the vehicle (Table 1). 4. They must be positioned to meet (see Note 1). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the positional requirements of Table 1 b) the angles of visibility requirements of Table 1 5. They must be of the correct shape (Table 1). 6. Rear reflectors must face predominately to the rear. |

Table 1

| TYPE | NUMBER | APPLICATION | COLOUR | POSITION | | | ANGLES OF VISIBILITY See Figures 1 & 2 of section 20 | APPROVAL MARK "E" or "e" Identity Symbol or BS Mark / Notes |
|---|---|---|--|---|---|-----------------|--|---|
| | | | | MAX DISTANCE FROM SIDE (mm) | MAX HEIGHT (mm) | MIN HEIGHT (mm) | | |
| Rear Retro Reflectors Non-triangular | Min 2 Max any number Includes optional (see Note 1) | Mandatory | Red | 400 (Min separation 600 unless vehicle width less than 1300, where Min separation 400) | 900 (1200 if built into a lamp cluster) or if impracticable due to body 1500 (See note1) | 250 | a. Horizontal i. 30° inwards and outwards. b. Vertical i. < 750mm above the ground 15° above and 5° below horizontal. ii. otherwise 15° above and below horizontal | IA or IB "E" or "e" |
| Front Retro Reflectors Non-triangular | Min 2 Max any number Includes optional (see Note 1) | Mandatory on motor vehicles with concealable front lamps with reflectors. Optional on all other motor vehicles. | White | 400 | 900 or if impracticable due to body 1500 | 250 | a. Horizontal i. 5° inwards and 30° outwards. b. Vertical i. < 750mm above the ground 15° above and 5° below horizontal. ii. otherwise 15° above and below horizontal | IA or IB "E" or "e" |
| Side Retro Reflectors Non-triangular | See below (see Note 1) | Mandatory on all motor vehicles exceeding 6m in length Optional on other motor vehicles | Amber The rearmost reflector may be red | N/A | Max. Height 900 (1200 if built into a lamp cluster) or if impracticable due to body 1500 | 250 | a. Horizontal 45° to the front and to the rear b. Vertical i. < 750mm above the ground 15° above and 5° below horizontal. ii. otherwise 15° above and below horizontal | I or IA or IB "E" or "e" |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> at least one side-reflector fitted to the middle third of the vehicle the foremost side- reflector being not further than 3 m from the front the distance between two adjacent side reflectors shall not exceed 3 m, this distance may be increased to 4 m where the bodywork makes it impractical to comply the distance between the rearmost side reflector and the rear of the vehicle shall not exceed 1 m | | | | | | | | |

Retro Reflectors 21

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Add RS 06 |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Link RS 4 to Note 1 and add text to table 1 regarding body shape |
| 4 | 03/05/2011 | Add new acceptable markings |
| 5 | 15/04/2024 | Amend Table 1 Max. Height Side Retro Reflectors. |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

22 End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Carry out a visual check of all outline marker, position, stop, side marker and daytime running lamps fitted to the vehicle for operation, colour, number, approval markings and correct positioning.</p> <p>With optional lamps check that fitment is permitted and they do not exceed the maximum number of lamps allowed to be fitted.</p> <p>Note 1: This standard does not apply when side marker lamps flash in conjunction with direction indicators.</p> <p>Note 2: Geometric angles of visibility and positional requirements are not required for all optional position lamps, stop lamps and end outline marker lamps.</p> <p>Note 3: The inspection of the side marker lamps applies to the obligatory lamps fitted to all vehicles exceeding 6m in length.</p> <p>Note 4: The inspection of end-outline marker lamps applies to the obligatory marker lamps fitted to vehicles exceeding 2.10m in width.</p> <p>Note 5: Both front and rear end outline marker lamps can be combined in one device.</p> <p>Note 6: Daytime running lamps. The lamps must be connected so that they switch off automatically when the headlamps are on.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All lamps must be 'e' or 'E' marked and where applicable, bear the appropriate identity marking as listed in Table 1. 2. The front and rear position lamps, end outline marker lamps and side marker lamps, (if fitted) must be switched on and off by the operation of one switch. (see Note 1). <p>Front and Rear Position Lamps</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (Table 1). 4. They must be operational. 5. They must only emit white light to the front / red light to the rear. 6. They must be positioned to meet (see Note 2). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. the positional requirements of Table 1 b. the angles of visibility requirements of Table 1 <p>Stop Lamps</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (Table 1). 8. They must be operational. 9. They must only emit red light. |

End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps 22

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Note 7: In addition to the Required Standards, vehicles MAY have EITHER of (1) or (2) below:</p> <p>(1) Direction indicator side repeater lamps Three category 5 side repeaters distributed as evenly as practicable along each side</p> <p>OR</p> <p>(2) Flashing Side marker lamps Mandatory amber side marker lamps may flash simultaneously with the direction-indicator lamps on the same side of the vehicle.</p> <p>Only one of the above specific combinations is allowed, no other combination is acceptable.</p> <p>Where (2) above is used, there is NO requirement for the side marker lamps to be marked in addition as side repeater lamps.</p> | <p>10. They must only illuminate when the service brake is applied and must extinguish when the service brake is released.</p> <p>11. They must be positioned to meet (see Note 2)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the positional requirements of Table 1 b. the angles of visibility requirements of Table 1 <p>Side Marker lamps (if required, see Notes 3 & 7)</p> <p>12. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (in accordance to the positional requirements).</p> <p>13. They must be operational.</p> <p>14. They must emit an amber light (red is acceptable if within 1 metre of the rear)</p> <p>15. They must be positioned to meet</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the positional requirements of Table 1 b. the angles of visibility requirements of Table 1 <p>End Outline Marker Lamps (if required, see Notes 4 & 5)</p> <p>16. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (Table 1).</p> <p>17. They must be operational.</p> <p>18. They must only emit red light to the rear / white light to the front.</p> <p>19. The lights must be a minimum of 200mm from a positional lamp.</p> |

End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps 22

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>20. They must be positioned to meet (see Note 1)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the positional requirements of Table 1 b. the angles of visibility requirements of Table 1 <p>Daytime running lamps;</p> <p>21. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (Table 1).</p> <p>22. They must be operational.</p> <p>23. They must only emit white light to the front.</p> <p>24. They must be positioned to meet</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the positional requirements of Table 1 b. the angles of visibility requirements of Table 1 <p>25. They must extinguish automatically when headlamps are operated (see Note 6).</p> |

End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps 22

Table 1

| TYPE | NUMBER | APPLICATION | COLOUR | POSITION | | | ANGLES OF VISIBILITY See Figures 1 & 2 of section 20 | APPROVAL MARK "E" or "e" Identity Symbol or BS Mark |
|-----------------------------|--|-------------|--------|--|-------------------------------|-----------------|--|---|
| | | | | MAX DISTANCE FROM SIDE (mm) | MAX HEIGHT (mm) | MIN HEIGHT (mm) | | |
| Front Position Lamps | Min. 2 Max any number Includes optional lamps (see Note 2) | Mandatory | White | 400 | 1500 or if impractical 2100 | 350 | a. Horizontal i. 45° Inwards ii. 80° Outwards b. Vertical i. 15° Above and below the horizontal (May be reduced to 5° if the lamps are less than 750mm above the ground) | A "E" or "e" |
| Rear Position Lamps | Min. 2 Max any number Includes optional lamps (see Note 2) | Mandatory | Red | 400 | 1500 or if impractical 2100 | 350 | a. Horizontal i. 45° Inwards ii. 80° Outwards b. Vertical i. 15° above and below the horizontal (May be reduced to 5° if the lamps are less than 750mm above the ground) | R "E" or "e" |
| Stop Lamps | Min. 2 Max any number Includes optional lamps | Mandatory | Red | One on each side of longitudinal axis (Min separation 600mm. 400mm if the overall width of vehicle is less than 1,300mm) | 1500 or if impracticable 2100 | 350 | a. Horizontal i. 45° inwards and outwards b. Vertical i. as rear position lamps. | S1 or S2 "E" or "e" |

End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps 22

| TYPE | NUMBER | APPLICATION | COLOUR | POSITION | | | ANGLES OF VISIBILITY See Figures 1 & 2 of section 20 | APPROVAL MARK "E" or "e" Identity Symbol or BS Mark |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---|--|---|
| | | | | MAX DISTANCE FROM SIDE (mm) | MAX HEIGHT (mm) | MIN HEIGHT (mm) | | |
| Stop Lamps (Optional) | Min. 1 Max any number (see Note 2) | Optional | Red | If 1 is fitted: as close to vehicle centre-line as practicable If 2 are fitted: no requirement | N/A | No lower than the mandatory stop lamps | Must face the rear | S1 or S2 S3 or S4 for High Level "E" or "e" |
| End Outline Marker Lamp | Min. 2 visible from the front and Min. 2 visible from the rear Max any number Includes optional lamps (see Note 2) | Mandatory on vehicles over 2.10m in width | Front-White Rear - Red | As close as possible to the extreme edge and not more than 400mm from the edge | - | Front The top of the lens no lower than the upper part of the windscreen that meets light transmission requirements Rear As high as possible compatible with the design and operational requirements | a. Horizontal i. 80° Outwards b. Vertical i. 5° Above the horizontal ii. 20° Below the horizontal | A or R "E" or "e" |
| Side Marker Lamp (see Note 7) | Min (see below) Max (any) | All vehicles where the length exceeds 6m | Amber (The rearmost marker may be red if it is combined with another rear lamp) | - | 1500 or if impracticable 2100 | 250 | a. Horizontal i. 45° to the front and rear (Can be reduced to 30° if fitted as an optional extra) b. Vertical i. 10° Above and below the horizontal (The vertical angle below the horizontal may be reduced to 5° if the side marker lamp is fitted less than 750mm from the ground) | SM "E" or "e" |

End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps 22

| TYPE | NUMBER | APPLICATION | COLOUR | POSITION | | | ANGLES OF VISIBILITY See Figures 1 & 2 of section 20 | APPROVAL MARK "E" or "e" Identity Symbol or BS Mark |
|--|------------------------|-------------|--------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---|---|
| | | | | MAX DISTANCE FROM SIDE (mm) | MAX HEIGHT (mm) | MIN HEIGHT (mm) | | |
| Daytime Running Lamp (Optional) | Min 2 Max 2 | Optional | White | 400mm | 1500mm | 250mm | a. Horizontal i. 20° Outwards and inwards b. Vertical i. 10° Upwards and downwards | "E" or "e" |
| Side Marker Lamp Spacing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> at least one side-marker lamp must be fitted to the middle third of the vehicle the foremost side-marker lamp being not further than 3 m from the front the distance between two adjacent side-marker lamps shall not exceed 3 m; this distance may be increased to 4 m where the bodywork makes it impractical to comply the distance between the rearmost side-marker lamp and the rear of the vehicle shall not exceed 1 m | | | | | | | | |

End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps 22

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 22/01/2010 | Added notes to the standards, reworded Note 1 and made changes to Table 1 |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Link RS6, 11 & 20 to Note 1, Add approval mark to Table 1(Optional Stop Lamps) |
| 4 | 30/11/2011 | Remove statement from MOI in reference to lamps must not swivel deflect etc. |
| 5 | 30/04/2012 | Add width requirement to End Outline Marker Lamps in Table 1 |
| 6 | 10/04/2018 | Add note 4 & renumber remaining notes amend table 1 |
| 7 | 01/07/2018 | Add Note 7 to replace MOI info |
| 8 | 01/09/2020 | Correct EOM lamp requirements in Table 1 |
| 9 | 15/04/2024 | Clarify minimum no. of end-outline marker lamps required, correct formatting, & clarify height requirements in Table 1 for End outline marker lamps, (IVA TSE M2M3 022 003), correct all references from Note 1 to Note 2 in Table 1 at 'number' column. |
| | | |

End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps 22

This page intentionally left blank

End Outline, Position (Side), Stop, Side Marker & Daytime Running Lamps 22

23 Direction Indicators

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>Carry out a visual check of all direction indicator and side repeater lamps fitted to the vehicle for operation, colour, number, approval markings and correct positioning.</p> <p>With optional lamps check that fitment is permitted and they do not exceed the maximum number of lamps allowed to be fitted.</p> <p>The inspection of hazard warning lamps applies to all the obligatory direction indicator and side repeater lamps fitted to the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 1: Geometric angles of visibility and positional requirements are not required for all optional direction indicator lamps.</p> <p>Note 2: In addition to the Required Standards, vehicles MAY have EITHER of (1) or (2) below:</p> <p>(1) Direction indicator side repeater lamps Three category 5 side repeaters distributed as evenly as practicable along each side OR</p> <p>(2) Flashing Side marker lamps Mandatory amber side marker lamps may flash simultaneously with the direction-indicator lamps on the same side of the vehicle.</p> | <p>Directional Indicators and side repeaters</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All lamps must be 'e' or 'E' marked and, where applicable, bear the appropriate identity marking as listed in Table 1. 2. They must be operational. 3. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (see Note 2 and Table 1). 4. The indicators must flash at a rate of between 60 and 120 times a minute (with all mandatory indicators working, and with the engine running if initially below the requirement). 5. There must be an audible or visual tell-tale fitted to indicate the operation of any indicators. 6. All lamps must emit amber light. 7. They must be positioned to meet (see Note 1) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. the positional requirements of Table 1 b. the angles of visibility requirements of Table 1 <p>Hazard Warning Lights</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. They must operate with the ignition switched on and off. |

Direction Indicators 23

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>Only one of the above specific combinations is allowed, no other combination is acceptable.</p> <p>Where (2) above is used, there is NO requirement for the side marker lamps to be marked in addition as side repeater lamps.</p> | <p>9. The hazard warning device must operate all of the direction indicators simultaneously.</p> <p>10. The hazard warning device must have a tell-tale warning light fitted which is circuit specific.</p> |

Table 1

| TYPE | NUMBER | APPLICATION | COLOUR | POSITION | | | ANGLES OF VISIBILITY See Figures 1 & 2 of section 20 | APPROVAL MARK "E" or "e" Identity Symbol or BS Mark / Notes |
|--|---|--------------|--------|---|--|---|---|--|
| | | | | MAX DISTANCE FROM SIDE (mm) | MAX HEIGHT (mm) | MIN HEIGHT (mm) | | |
| <p>Direction Indicators (See Note 2) & Hazard Warning</p> | <p>Motor Vehicles On each side Front – One</p> <p>Rear – One Plus 2 optional all vehicles- Rear only</p> <p>Side Repeater – One</p> <p>Optional Up to 3 (category 5) or 1 (Category 6) if vehicle over 9m in length</p> | All Vehicles | Amber | 400 (Min separation 600 unless vehicle width is less than 1300, where min separation 400) | 1500 or if impracticable 2300 for side direction indicators and 2100 for front and rear direction indicators | <p>Side indicators 500.</p> <p>Other indicators 350</p> | <p>a. Horizontal i. 80° outwards 45° inwards. ii. (SIDE REPEATER) To the rear between 5° and 60° outboard.</p> <p>b. Vertical i. < 750mm above the ground 15° above and 5° below horizontal. ii. Otherwise 15° above and below horizontal.</p> | <p>Front 1, 1a, 1b or 11</p> <p>Front – side 3 or 4</p> <p>Side Repeater 5 or 6</p> <p>Rear 2a, 2b or 12</p> <p>"E" or "e"</p> |
| <p>Note: A side repeater lamp must be fitted within 2600 mm of the front of the vehicle</p> | | | | | | | | |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|-----------------|-------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/10/2010 | Link RS7 to Note 1 |
| 3 | 03/05/2011 | Change MOI layout |
| 4 | 11/02/2013 | Insert new Note 2 and link to Table 1 |
| 5 | 10/04/2018 | Add to MOI Ref extra indicators amend table 1 remove note 2 |
| 6 | 01/07/2018 | Add Info from MOI as Note 2 (Ref indicators/side marker options) |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

24 Rear Registration Lamps

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>Carry out a visual check of all rear registration plate lamps fitted to the vehicle for operation, colour, and correct positioning.</p> <p>Note 1: See section 4 Rear Registration Plate Space in conjunction with position of rear registration plate lamp.</p> | <p>Rear registration plate lamps;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All lamps must be 'e' or 'E' marked. 2. They must be operational. 3. They must be able to be switched on and off with the front and rear position lights by operating one switch. 4. They must only emit white light. 5. They must be positioned sufficient to illuminate the rear registration plate (see Note 1). |

Record of Revision


| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/10/2010 | Remove reference to Max Number of Optional Lamps in MOI |
| 3 | 03/05/2011 | Remove the reference to minimum and maximum number of lamps |
| 4 | 10/04/2018 | Amend Note 1 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

25 Headlamps

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>Carry out a visual check of all headlamps fitted to the vehicle for operation, colour, number, approval markings and correct positioning.</p> <p>With optional lamps check that fitment is permitted and they do not exceed the maximum number of lamps allowed to be fitted.</p> <p>In the case of a dipped beam headlamp the minimum height is measured to the lower edge of the light emitting surface.</p> <p>Note 1: The 'Main Beam' tell-tale can be either blue in colour, or a tell-tale (any colour but preferably blue) with the symbol (see section 33) or a tell-tale any colour and the words Main Beam or Main.</p> <p>Note 2: The alignment requirement must be met without the use of masks or beam converters unless they are an integral part of the headlamp as it was approved. Devices or materials applied to the inside of a headlamp which were not present at the time of approval are unacceptable.</p> <p>Some vehicles may be fitted with an in-car driver's headlamp adjustment device. This may be adjusted to enable both headlamps to meet the criteria. Both headlamps, however, must comply with the requirements with the device set in one position.</p> | <p>Headlamps;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All lamps must be 'e' or 'E' marked and where applicable, bear the appropriate identity marking as listed in Table 1. 2. They must be 'operational'. 3. All obligatory and optional headlamps must be fitted as 'matched pairs'. 4. They must emit a white light. 5. When on dip or main beam they must emit sufficient light to be able to illuminate the road in front of the vehicle. 6. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (Table 1). 7. Dipped beam headlamps must be positioned to meet the requirements of Table 1. 8. There must be a tell-tale when on main beam (see Note 1). <p>Gas Discharge and LED Headlamps. (see Note 4)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9. Must be accompanied by evidence of compliance with the technical requirements if not compliant with the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • is "E" or "e" marked • dipped beam remains on when main beam is on (gas discharge only) • is fitted with a wash system • is fitted with an automatic headlamp self-levelling system or self-levelling suspension. |

Headlamps 25

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>Align the headlamp aim testing equipment to the vehicle in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. With an assistant sitting in the driver’s seat, check the alignment of each dipped beam headlamp in association with the appropriate criteria.</p> <p>Note 3: Example of marking showing the vertical downwards inclination of the dipped-beam headlamps when the vehicle is at its kerbside weight and has a weight of 75 kg on the driver's seat.</p>  <p>Note 4: Where vehicles are fitted with Gas Discharge or LED Headlamps there is no requirement for headlamp cleaning if the light output is below 2000 Lumens (evidence must be provided).</p> | <p>Headlamp Aim (see Note 2)</p> <p>European Type (checked on dipped beam)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10. The beam image ‘kick-up’ must not be to the offside. 11. For headlamps with centres not more than 850mm from the ground, the beam image horizontal cut-off must be between the horizontal 0.5% and 2% lines, i.e. the red tolerance band. 12. For headlamps with centres more than 850mm from the ground, the beam image horizontal cut-off must be between the horizontal 1.25% and 2.75% lines, i.e. the blue tolerance band. 13. The beam image ‘break point’ must not be to the right of the 0% vertical line, or to the left of the vertical 2% line. 14. The vehicle must be marked with a clearly legible and indelible marking showing the setting recommended by the manufacturer for the downward inclination of the horizontal part of the cut-off of the beam pattern of the dipped-beam headlamps, that setting shall be a single figure (see Note 3). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. between 1 and 1.5 per cent if the height of the centre of the headlamp is not more than 850 mm above the ground, and b. between 1 and 2 per cent if the height of the centre of the headlamp is more than 850 mm above the ground. |

European Type Headlamp

Checked on Dipped Beam

Check the position of the 'break point' and horizontal cut-off.

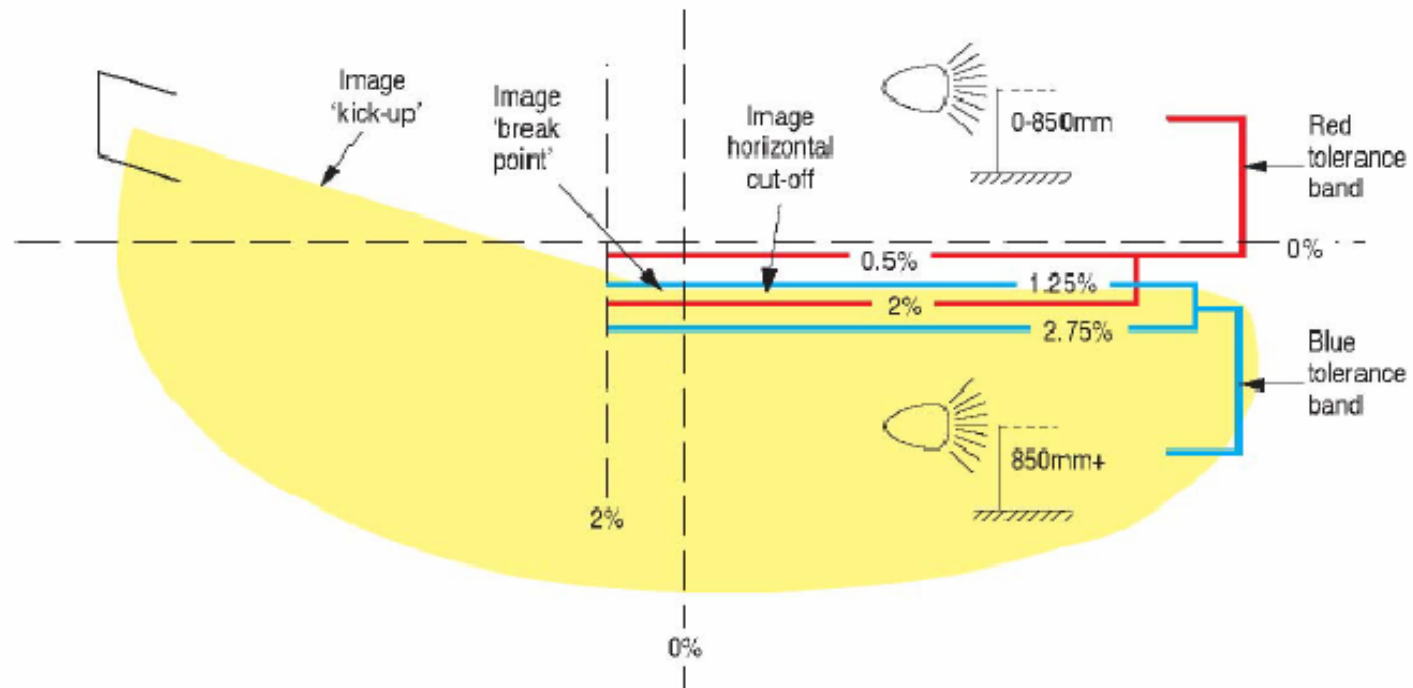


Table 1

| TYPE | NUMBER | APPLICATION | COLOUR | POSITION | | | ANGLES OF VISIBILITY See Figures 1 & 2 of section 20 | APPROVAL MARK "E" or "e" Identity Symbol or BS Mark / Notes |
|-----------------------------|----------------|----------------|--------|---|-----------------|-----------------|--|---|
| | | | | MAX DISTANCE FROM SIDE (mm) | MAX HEIGHT (mm) | MIN HEIGHT (mm) | | |
| Dipped Beam Headlamp | Min 2 Max 2 | Motor Vehicles | White | 400 | 1200 | 500 | Angles of Visibility: 45° out 10° in 15° up 10° down | C "E" or "e" |
| Main Beam Headlamp | Min 2 Max 4 | Motor Vehicles | White | May be in the same lamp assemblies as dipped beam | - | - | No requirement | R "E" or "e" |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 22/01/2010 | Required Standard 13 added |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Remove positional requirement from table 1 |
| 4 | 03/05/2011 | Link note 1 to headlamp aim |
| 5 | 31/07/2011 | Add L.E.D to the Gas Discharge Heading |
| 6 | 30/11/2011 | Remove statement from MOI in reference to lamps must not swivel deflect etc. |
| 7 | 11/02/2013 | Insert new Note 1 and new RS8 |
| 8 | 10/04/2018 | Add information to MOI |
| 9 | 01/07/2018 | Replace info in MOI as Note 4 (Gas discharge/LED lights) |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

26 Front Fog Lamps

Application: All Vehicles (optional)

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>Carry out a visual check of all front fog lamps for operation, colour, number, approval markings and correct positioning.</p> <p>Note 1: When changing from dipped to main beam the front fog lamps may be extinguished and may be switched back on when changing back from main-beam to dipped-beam.</p> | <p>Front fog lamps;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All lamps must be 'e' or 'E' marked and, where applicable, bear the appropriate identity marking as listed in Table 1. 2. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (Table 1). 3. They must be operational. 4. They must be able to be switched on only when the position lights are on and must operate independently of the dipped and main beam headlamp (see Note 1). 5. They must only emit white or yellow light. 6. They must be positioned correctly to meet the positional requirements of Table 1. |

Table 1

| TYPE | NUMBER | APPLICATION | COLOUR | POSITION | | | ANGLES OF VISIBILITY See Figures 1 & 2 of section 20 | APPROVAL MARK "E" or "e" Identity Symbol or BS Mark / Notes |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|--|-----------------|---|---|
| | | | | MAX DISTANCE FROM SIDE (mm) | MAX HEIGHT (mm) | MIN HEIGHT (mm) | | |
| Front Fog Lamps | Two (Maximum) | optional | White or Yellow | 400 | 1200 but no higher than dipped beam headlamp | 250 | Not Applicable | B "E" or "e" |

Front Fog Lamps 26

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 30/11/2011 | Add note 1 and link to RS4 |
| 3 | 01/09/2020 | Max height from UN Reg 48.03 added |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

27 Towing Hooks

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>The vehicle must be equipped with a device at the front that enables the vehicle to be towed that can withstand a tractive and compressive static force of at least half the authorised total weight of the vehicle.</p> <p>The device may be in the form of a fixed or screw-in eyelet, welded loop, a holed metal plate, or may be incorporated into the vehicle structure. Removable / retractable towing device eyes or loops will need to be placed into the 'towing position' to be assessed.</p> <p>Where a vehicle has been adapted and the special purposes make it impossible to fully comply, the manufacturer shall demonstrate to the satisfaction of the approval authority that the vehicle cannot meet the requirements due to its special purpose.</p> <p>Note 1: Where visually the device or surrounding structure does not appear to be of sufficient strength, the presenter shall provide evidence from the manufacturer of the vehicle and/or the device to the requirements of this section.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle must have a suitable towing device on the front of the vehicle to allow the attachment of a rigid towing bar. 2. Any towing hook or eye, mounting arrangement, bracket, or surrounding vehicle structure must be able to withstand the loads expected (see Note 1). |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/10/2010 | Remove the reference to Rope from RS 1 |
| 3 | 10/04/2018 | Insert MOI |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

28 Rear Fog Lamps

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Carry out a visual check of the rear fog lamps fitted to the vehicle for operation, colour, number, approval markings and correct positioning.</p> <p>With optional lamps check that fitment is permitted and they do not exceed the maximum number of lamps allowed to be fitted.</p> <p>Rear Fog Lamp separation distance must be measured between the “illuminating surface” of each lamp (See Table 1).</p> <p>Note 1: Front fog lamps may be illuminated with the side lamps only.</p> <p>Note 2: Either of the following scenarios will also be considered acceptable:</p> <p>The rear fog lamp(s) may continue to operate until the position lamps are switched off, and the rear fog lamp(s) must then remain off until deliberately switched on again</p> <p>or,</p> <p>A warning, at least audible, additional to the mandatory tell-tale light shall be given if the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn and the driver's door is opened, whether the lamps in (RS4) are on or off, whilst the rear fog lamp switch is in the "on" position.</p> | <p>Rear fog lamps;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All lamps must be ‘e’ or ‘E’ marked and where applicable, bear the appropriate identity marking as listed in Table 1. 2. They must be operational. 3. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (Table 1). 4. The rear fog lamp(s) must only illuminate when dipped beam, main beam or front fog lamps are lit (see alternatives in Notes 1 & 2). 5. The rear fog lamps must not be affected by switching on or off any other lamps (except those above). 6. Can be switched off independently of any other lamp and either: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. may continue to be operated until the position lamps are switched off and then must remain off until deliberately switched back on <p>or</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> b. a warning, at least audible, additional to the mandatory tell tale is given if the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn, and the driver's door is opened whilst the rear fog lamp switch is in the 'on' position 7. They must only emit a red light. 8. They must be positioned correctly to meet: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. the positional requirements of Table 1 |

Rear Fog Lamps 28

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Note 3: When grouped with any rear lamp, the maximum height may be increased to 1200mm. For categories M2G & M3G (off-road) vehicles, the maximum height may be increased to 1400 mm.</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. the angles of visibility requirements of Table 1 9. Must be fitted with an operational 'tell-tale' lamp (non-flashing) visible from the driving position. 10. Must not be operated by a brake control. 11. Fitted so that the reflector is facing squarely to the rear. 12. Where two rear fog lamps are fitted, they must form a matched pair. 13. Where two rear fog lamps are fitted, they must operate as a matched pair. |

Table 1

| TYPE | NUMBER | APPLICATION | COLOUR | POSITION | | | ANGLES OF VISIBILITY See Figures 1 & 2 of section 20 | APPROVAL MARK “E” or “e” Identity Symbol or BS Mark / Notes |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|--------|--|------------------------------|-----------------|--|---|
| | | | | MAX DISTANCE FROM SIDE (mm) | MAX HEIGHT (mm) | MIN HEIGHT (mm) | | |
| Rear Fog Lamp | Min 1 Max 2 | All Vehicles | Red | At least one must be on centre line or to offside of vehicle (Min separation distance from stop lamp 100 mm) | 1000 (see Note 3) | 250 | a. Horizontal i. 25° inwards and outwards; if two lamps are fitted it is sufficient if one lamp (not necessarily the same lamp) – is visible throughout the range b. Vertical i. 5° above and below horizontal. | B or F “E” or “e” |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 11/02/2013 | Revise layout of RS6 |
| 3 | 10/04/2018 | Insert new note 2 & link to RS4, revise RS12 & 13, reorder & revise MOI, amend height requirement |
| 4 | 15/04/2024 | Revise Table 1 Max. Height column and add new Note 3 (TSE M2M3 028 001) |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

29 Reversing Lamps

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>Carry out a visual check of the reverse lamps fitted to the vehicle for operation, colour, number, approval markings and correct positioning (see Table 1).</p> <p>With optional lamps check that fitment is permitted and they do not exceed the maximum number of lamps allowed to be fitted.</p> <p>Note 1: The geometric visibility is considered to be ensured if the reference axis of the respective device is directed outwards with an outward angle not exceeding 15° relative to the median longitudinal plane of the vehicle. The vertical aim of the two optional devices may be directed downwards.</p> | <p>Reverse lamps;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All lamps must be 'e' or 'E' marked and where applicable, bear the appropriate identity marking as listed in Table 1. 2. They must be operational. 3. The correct number must be fitted to the vehicle (Table 1). 4. They must emit white light. 5. They must be positioned to face the rear and meet the positional requirements of Table 1. 6. They must operate by selection of reverse gear. <p>If the optional reverse lamps are fitted to the side of the vehicle and used for slow manoeuvres in a forward motion (see Note 1).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. The devices must be activated and deactivated manually by a separate switch. 8. They must be automatically switched off if the forward speed of the vehicle exceeds 10 km/h, regardless of the position of the separate switch. In this case they shall remain switched off until deliberately being switched on again. |

Table 1

| TYPE | NUMBER | APPLICATION | COLOUR | POSITION | | | ANGLES OF VISIBILITY | APPROVAL MARK "E" or "e" Identity Symbol or BS Mark / Notes |
|-----------------|---|---|--------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---|---|
| | | | | MAX DISTANCE FROM SIDE (mm) | MAX HEIGHT (mm) | MIN HEIGHT (mm) | | |
| Reversing Lamps | Min 1 Max 2 | All Vehicles up to 6000mm | White | - | 1200 | 250 | Refer to Figure 3, Section 20 | A or R "E" or "e" |
| | Min 2 Max 4 (Includes optional lamps) | Vehicles with a length exceeding 6000mm | | | | | If optional lamps are fitted to the side of the vehicle: Outwards Maximum 15° relative to the median longitudinal plane See Note 1 | |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 10/04/2018 | Amend table 1, Add Note 1, amend all RSs |
| 3 | 15/04/2024 | Revise RS6 (TSE IVA M2M3 029 002) |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

31 Seat Belts

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>Disabled persons belts Disabled person belts are seat belts which have been specially designed or adapted for use by an adult or young person suffering from some physical or mental impairment, intended for use solely by such a person and as such are exempt the requirements of this section, however the belt must be securely attached and appear to operate as intended.</p> <p>Seats not intended for road use (a) The requirements of this section do not apply to seats intended for use solely while the vehicle is stationary or for when the vehicle is not used on a public road. (b) Any seats which are not for use when travelling on a public road must be clearly identified to users by means of a pictogram or a sign with appropriate text.</p> <p>Where optional belts are fitted they must comply with the requirements of this section.</p> <p>In the case of armoured vehicles exemption from any requirement of this section is permitted if it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the Approval Authority that it is impossible for the vehicle to comply due to its special purpose.</p> <p>Approved seats with integral belts Where a seat belt is fitted to the seat it must be an approved seat (see section 19) in this case RS 10,15 16 and 17 will be covered by the approval.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Each seat requiring a belt must be fitted with a seat belt of the appropriate type. See Annex 1. 2. Each seat belt must bear an appropriate “e” approval mark. 3. Where seats are intended for use only when the vehicle is not being driven on public roads, the seats must be accompanied by a pictogram or sign clearly indicating that the seat is not to be used whilst the vehicle is in motion. 4. Each seat belt must be attached by an appropriate fixing and be securely fitted (see Notes 1 & 2). 5. There must be no damage to the seat belt structure that would affect its strength. 6. The lock mechanism must securely lock the belt. 7. The lock mechanism must be able to be released easily, both in normal use and when the belt is under load. 8. The retractor mechanism must be of an acceptable type and be correctly positioned to ensure the correct operation of the belt (see Notes 3 & 4). 9. With the seat belt fastened and the seat unoccupied, retractor mechanisms must take up any excess webbing (see Note 5). |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>Sleeper bunks Seats designed for dual function as sleeper bunks should be assessed in the seating mode only.</p> <p>Note 1: A suitable single bolt fixing of adequate strength would be, for example, a bolt of at least 11mm (7/16") diameter of grade 8.8 (the grade may not be shown on a bolt produced for a seat belt anchorage) Other bolt fixings may be acceptable providing they are of equivalent strength. Two adjacent seat belts may be secured by one bolt. In this case consideration must be given to the additional loads on the anchorage .</p> <p>Note 2: In order that a seat belt can be separated from the anchorage without causing damage to the anchorage, for example a mounting in the side of a tube or box section, it is a requirement that the bolt be secured into a "fixed" threaded hole or captive nut. (The presenter may be required to demonstrate this condition is met). The bolt may be secured into an alternative fixing, e.g. a lock nut of suitable strength, where access is provided to the "rear" of the mounting to enable separation/re-attachment of the belt.</p> <p>Note 3: A belt may be fitted with retractor mechanisms on both lap and diagonal sections. If fitted with a single retractor mechanism it must act initially on the diagonal (shoulder) section.</p> <p>Note 4: An "automatically locking" retractor (i.e. one that allows extension of the belt to the desired length and when the buckle is fastened locks on retraction but then prevents subsequent forward movement by the wearer, unlike a typical inertia reel belt), is not permitted unless the feature is only provided after full extension of the belt from the retractor, i.e. for use as a child restraint.</p> <p>Note 5: Some types of retracting belt might need assistance in order to retract.</p> | <p>10. The seat belt must sit correctly across the wearer's torso so as to provide effective restraint in the event of a frontal impact (see Notes 3,4,6,7 & 8).</p> <p>11. There must not be any sharp edges / objects in the seat belt area likely to cause damage to the belt.</p> <p>12. Where an airbag is fitted in front of a passenger position, a warning label for the airbag must be permanently fixed to the vehicle.</p> <p>13. The warning label for the airbag must be visible in front of a person about to install a rearward facing child restraint.</p> <div> </div> <p>14. The warning label for the airbag must be visible when the door is closed otherwise a permanent reference elsewhere that is visible at all times is required.</p> <p>15. A harness or three point belt "effective upper anchorage" location must be at least 450mm above the reference point. (see Note 9 and figure 1).</p> <p>16. A lap/diagonal belt "effective upper anchorage" location must be at least 140mm from the longitudinal centre line of the seat. (see Note 9)</p> |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Note 6: Where a seat belt is not integral with the seat as approved, check that whilst sitting in each seat in turn, and wearing the seat belt, secured, and correctly adjusted, that the position of the webbing on the torso and the location of the effective belt anchorage points in relation to the seated body position are correct.</p> <p>Note 7: The seat belt must be capable of effectively restraining the occupant:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • by the position of the lap belt (due to anchorage location) passing over the pelvic region • in the case of a harness belt or three point belt, by being positioned across the shoulder so that it does not slip off the shoulder of the occupant. <p>Note 8: Where the seat is adjustable, this check must be carried out with the seat secured in the rearmost position and with the back rest in the normal driving position, in any case at a rearward angle of not more than approximately 25° from the vertical.</p> <p>Note 9: The effective belt anchorage is the actual anchorage point to the vehicle unless a change of direction of the belt to the wearer is produced by a fixed intermediate device, for example, a belt guide fitted to the upper part of a seat back, consideration should be made to the suitability of the seat to withstand the loads likely to be imposed. The requirements Section 19, RS 2 apply to the effective anchorage location.</p> <p>Note 10: Seats may vary by only 10° from either the forward or rearward facing direction before they become side facing.</p> | <p>17. The lower anchorages must be at least 350mm apart.</p> <p>18. The lower anchorages on side facing seats must be at least 350mm apart but no further apart than 500mm (see Note 10).</p> |

Annex 1 Seat Belts – Minimum Obligatory Requirements

The table lists the minimum required belt type. A 3 point retractor belt may be fitted where the minimum required is a 2 point retractor lap belt and an acceptable alternative to any of the seat belt types listed is an adult harness belt comprising a lap belt and shoulder straps providing the anchorages satisfy section 19.

| Vehicle GVW | Forward Facing Seat | | | Rearward Facing Seat | Sideward Facing Seat |
|--|--------------------------|---|---|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| | Driver | Front | Other | | |
| Any vehicle with standees | none | none | None | none | None |
| Mass no greater than 3500kg with no standees | 3 Point retractor belt * | 3 Point retractor belt * | 3 Point retractor belt * | 2 point retractor lap belt | 2 point retractor lap belt |
| Mass greater than 3500kg with no standees | 3 Point retractor belt * | 2 point retractor lap belt (see Table Note 1) | 2 point retractor lap belt (see Table Note 1) | 2 point retractor lap belt | 2 point retractor lap belt |
| Vehicle for the carriage of prisoners | 3 Point retractor belt * | 3 Point retractor belt * if seat for crew use | None (see Section 19) | None (see Section 19) | None (see Section 19) |

* '3 point belt' means a seat belt which:

- restrains the upper and lower parts of the torso
- includes a lap belt and a retractor that operates on the diagonal part
- is anchored at not less than three points, and
- is designed for use by an adult.

TABLE NOTE 1: A 3 point belt is required where an item is determined to be within the reference zone as determined by annex 3 and that item is not accompanied by satisfactory evidence to the energy absorbing requirements of 74/408 EEC. **This only applies to Mandatory Belts.**

Figure 1 Effective Anchorage Upper Height Measurement

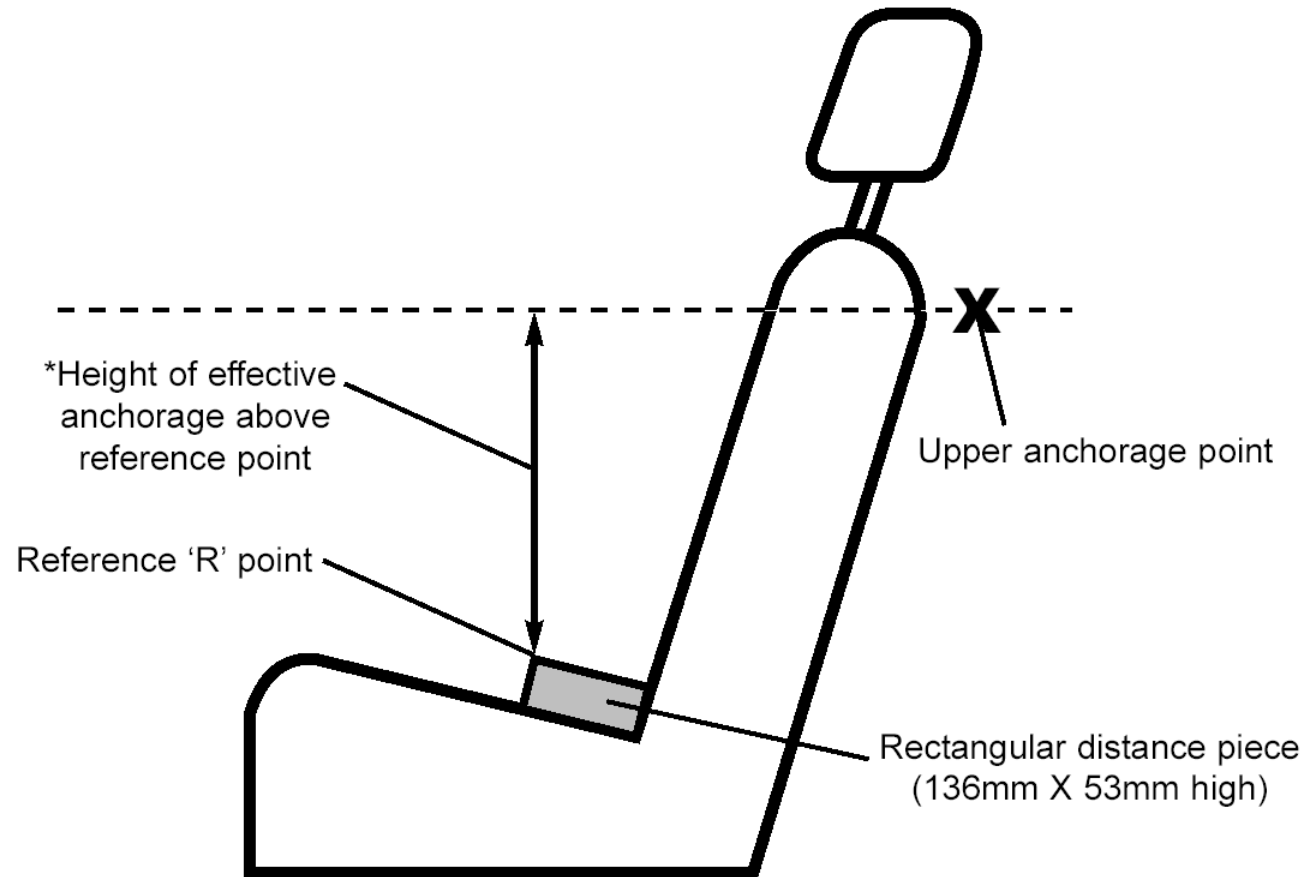
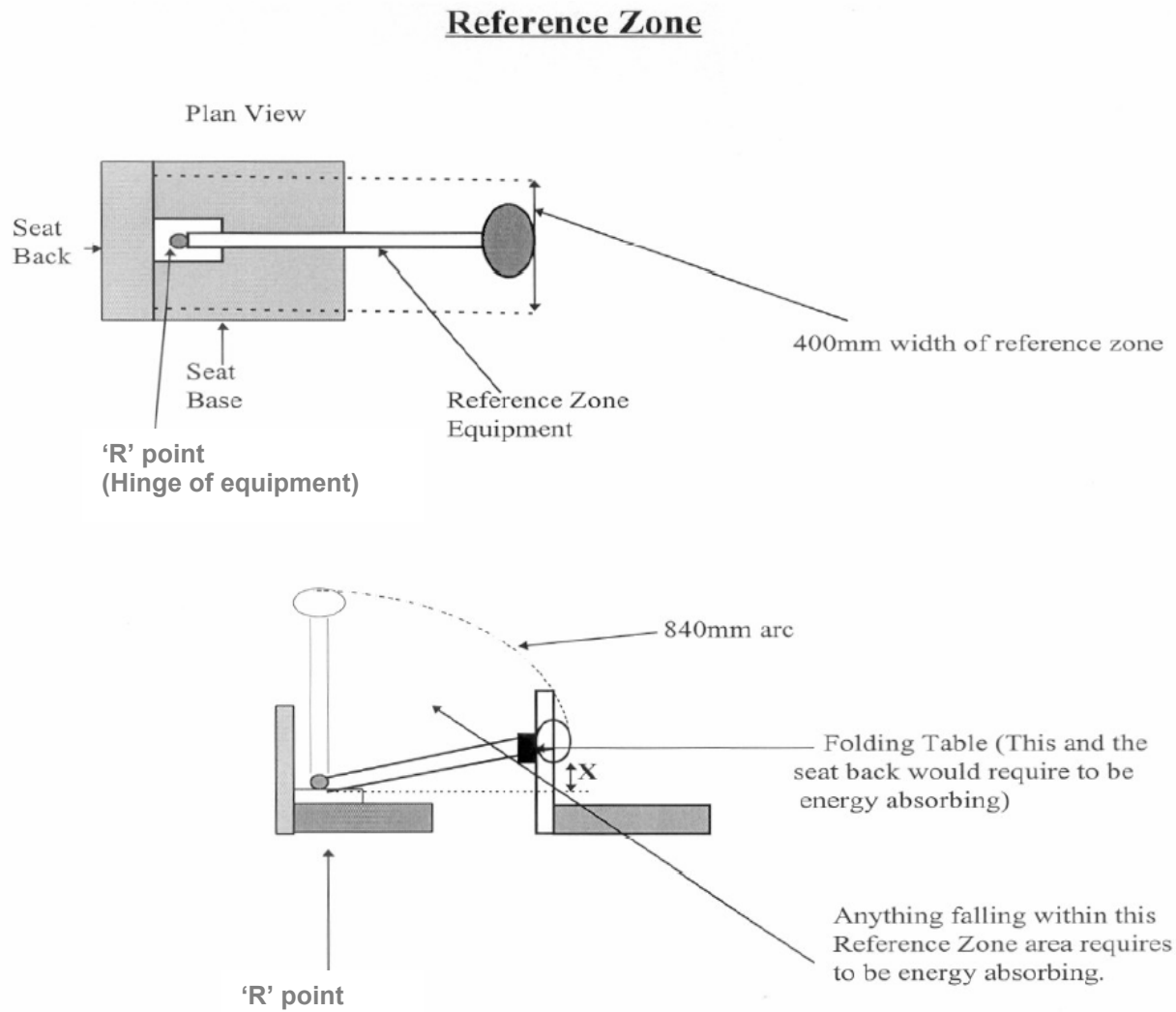


Figure 2 Determination of Reference Zone



Note: X = Lower position of the reference zone 25.4mm above the R point.

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 22/01/2010 | Annex 3 amended; H point replaced by R point |
| 3 | 11/02/2013 | Insert new paragraph in Mol, Insert new Note 10 and link to RS18 |
| 4 | 10/04/2018 | Amend MOI RS & Notes |
| 5 | 15/04/2024 | Amend reference to RS in Note 9 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

33 Identification of Controls
























Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure that any controls, tell-tales, and indicators fitted to the vehicle are readily identifiable, useable and of the correct colour.</p> <p>Where a control, tell-tail or indicator are combined, a common symbol may be used for such a combination.</p> <p>Note 1: A control means that part of a device which enables the driver to bring about a change in the state or functioning of the vehicle.</p> <p>An indicator means a device which presents information on the functioning or situation of a system or part of a system. e.g., fluid level.</p> <p>A tell-tale means an optical signal which indicates the actuation of a device, correct or defective functioning or condition, or failure to function.</p> <p>Note 2: Symbols as shown in Table A, these symbols may differ slightly as long as they cause no confusion to the driver.</p> <p>Note 3: Controls, tell-tales, and indicators listed in Table B are not required to be marked. However, present symbols must conform to those listed. These symbols may differ slightly as long as they cause no confusion to the driver.</p> | <p>Symbols as shown in Table A and B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The controls, tell-tales and Indicators must be identified with the correct symbols and the stated colour: (see Notes 1,2, 3 & 4) 2. They must be on or close to the controls, tell-tales, and indicators. 3. They must stand out clearly from the background. 4. The vehicle must not be fitted with other controls, tell-tales and indicators that have symbols that may be confused with the symbols listed in Tables A and B (see Note 3). 5. All symbols must contrast with the background and be identifiable by the driver. 6. All driver controls must be able to be operated from the driver’s seat. <p>Information Display Device Fitted (see Note 5)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. It must be able to display simultaneously the warning symbols for brake, main beam, and direction indicator. 8. It must provide the relevant information regarding tell – tales and indicators whenever the situation that causes them to operate arises. 9. Must repeat automatically in sequence or indicate in such a manner that it is visible to and identifiable to the driver when two or more messages are given. |

Identification of Controls 33




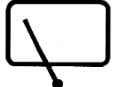

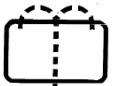





| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|-------------------|
| <p>Note 4: Other controls, tell-tales and indicators may be marked provided there is no confusion with those marked in accordance with those on Table A or B.</p> <p>Note 5: An information display device is a device capable of displaying more than one type of message or information. The requirements regarding colour do not apply to tell-tales and indicators appearing on the Information Display Device.</p> | |

Table A

| Control, Tell-tale or Indicator | Symbol | Warning light / tell - tale | Control, Tell-tale or Indicator | Symbol | Warning light / tell - tale | Control, Tell-tale or Indicator | Symbol | Warning light / tell - tale |
|---------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|--|---|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| Master Light |  | Green | Direction Indicators |  | Green | Ventilating fan |  | |
| Dipped Beam Headlamps |  | Green | Hazard Warning |  | Red | Diesel Pre-heat |  | Yellow |
| Main Beam Headlamps |  | Blue (See note 1 in Section 25) | Windscreen Wiper |  | | Choke (cold starting device) |  | Yellow |
| Position (side) Lamps |  | Green | Windscreen Washer |  | | Brake Failure |  | Red |
| Front Fog lamps |  | Green | Windscreen Wiper and Washer |  | | Fuel Level |  | Yellow |
| Rear Fog Lamps |  | Yellow | Headlamp Cleaning Device (with separate operating control) |  | | Battery Charging Condition |  | Red |
| Headlamp Levelling device |  | | Windscreen demisting and defrosting (when separate) |  | Yellow | Engine Coolant temperature |  | Red |
| Parking Lamps |  | Green | Rear Window demisting and defrosting (when separate) |  | Yellow | | | |

Identification of Controls 33

Table B

| Control, Tell-tale or Indicator | Symbol | Notes | Warning light / tell - tale | Control, Tell-tale or Indicator | Symbol | Warning light / tell - tale |
|---------------------------------|---|--|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| Parking Brake |  | Where a single tell-tale indicates more than one brake system condition, except brake anti-lock system failure, the symbol for brake failure must be used. | | Horn |  | |
| Bonnet |  | Outline only may be used. | | Rear Window Wiper |  | |
| Boot |  | Outline only may be used. | | Rear window Washer. |  | |
| Seat Belt |  | Outline only may be used. | Red | Rear Window Wiper and washer. |  | |
| Engine Oil Pressure |  | | Red | Intermittent Windscreen wiper. |  | |
| Unleaded Petrol |  | | | | | |

Identification of Controls 33

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Add the word "and" to RS1 |
| 3 | 03/05/2011 | Reword Note 2 to allow for symbols to differ slightly as long as they cause no confusion |
| 4 | 04/03/2013 | Amend Main Beam Warning Light / Tell-tale information in Table 1 |
| 5 | 10/04/2018 | Amend and add notes amend RS |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

34 Defrost / Demist

Application: All Vehicles fitted with a Windscreen

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Ensure that the vehicle is fitted with a system/systems capable of defrosting and demisting the windscreen (at least the swept area) to allow the driver an adequate view of the road in front and forward of the nearside and offside of the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 1: The fitting of a device not permanently incorporated into the vehicle structure i.e.. adhered to the windscreen or body surface shall not be considered as a “system fitted to the vehicle.”</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle must be fitted with a system capable of defrosting / demisting at least the swept area of the windscreen (see Note 1). 2. A system using warm air to clear the screen must employ fan assistance and ducting to direct the air onto the screen, to ensure effective operation of the defrosting system under cold weather conditions. 3. An electrically heated screen must provide adequate heat and distribution to ensure effective operation. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

35 Wash / Wipe

Application: All Vehicles fitted with a Windscreen

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Vehicles shall be fitted with adequate windscreen washing and wiping devices. Ensure that with the windscreen wet and the engine running, all wipers continue to move automatically over an area of the windscreen sufficient to give the driver an adequate view of the road in front and forward of the nearside and offside of the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 1: A 'cycle' is the forward and return movement of the windscreen wiper.</p> <p>Note 2: Intermittent operation windscreen-wiper systems may be used for the purposes of complying with the requirements of RS3 provided that one of the frequencies obtained when the main frequency is interrupted is not less than 10 cycles/minute.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle must be fitted with a windscreen washer and wiper system to give the driver an adequate view of the road. 2. All front wipers must continue to move automatically over the swept area of the windscreen. 3. All front wipers must have at least two sweep frequencies (see Notes 1 & 2). 4. All front wipers must return automatically to a position of rest which is at or beyond the outer edge of the swept area. 5. All front wipers must be capable of being lifted from the windscreen to allow for cleaning of the windscreen. 6. The windscreen washer system must provide enough liquid to adequately clear the windscreen in conjunction with the wipers. 7. The windscreen washer system must have a reservoir capacity of at least 1 litre. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Amend RS5 text in brackets to read (see note 1 & 2) |
| 3 | 29/04/2010 | Remove RS 4 and 5 and renumber remaining Required Standards |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

36 Heating Systems

Application: All Vehicles (optional fitment)

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>Heating Systems must be fitted as to present no danger to passengers or other persons.</p> <p>The heating System may be of the following types and one or more of each may be fitted:</p> <p>Heater using waste heat from water-cooled engine</p> <p>Must comply to RS 1 and 2</p> <p>Combustion heater</p> <p>Note 1: Requires documentary evidence or an 'E' marked component, manufacturers fitting instructions, plus an Installation Check.</p> <p>Note 2 A permanent notice stating that the heating system must not be used, and the gas cylinder valve must be closed when the vehicle is in motion or words to that effect.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There must be no obvious fire risk associated with the heating system (e.g. flammable parts of the vehicle near to a source of heat or a likelihood of users placing objects liable to catch fire on a very hot surface). 2. There must be no obvious injury risk associated with the heating system (e.g. likelihood of users touching a very hot surface or hot water pipes). 3. If a combustion heater is fitted, then it must be accompanied by documentary evidence (see Note 1). <p>Combustion heater Installation Check</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. It must be positioned so not likely to cause injury. 5. Utilising a liquid or gaseous fuel must be fitted to the manufacturer's instructions (see Note 1). 6. A fuel filling point shared by the heater and the engine must have a notice fitted instructing that the heater must be shut down before refuelling. 7. The heater exhaust must be positioned so exhaust gases are not likely to enter the driver / passenger compartment. |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|---|
| | <p>LPG heating systems for stationary use only</p> <p>8. Permanent warning labels/pictograms must be attached (see Note 2):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • on the compartment where portable LPG cylinders are stored, and • in close proximity to the control device for the heating system. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/10/2010 | Reword RS 06 |
| 3 | 10/04/2018 | Align with N manual |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

45 Safety Glass

Application: All Vehicles (except Armoured)


| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>Ensure that all windscreens, windows, internal glazed panels, and side screens are securely attached to the vehicle and are constructed from approved materials.</p> <p>The inspection of internally glazed panels applies to a partition or screen divider used for the separation of driver to passenger area or for passenger protection. It does not apply to such items like; break glass hammer panels, fire extinguisher panels or LED information screens, etc. This is not an exhaustive list but is provided as guidance.</p> <p>Note 1: 'Safety Glazing' made from glass or plastic must be so constructed or treated that if fractured it does not fly into fragments likely to cause severe cuts. Each piece of glazing must display the relevant permanent marking applied by the glazing manufacturer.</p> <p>Example of a marking</p> <p style="text-align: center;">  </p> <p>Note 2: This only applies to those windows or parts of window affording the driver a view of the road.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Windscreens, windows, internal glazed panels, and side-screens where fitted must be securely attached to the vehicle. 2. Windscreens, windows, internal glazed panels, and side-screens where fitted must be suitable for its use (see Table 1). 3. Windscreens and windows wholly or partly on either side of the driver's seat must be 'Safety Glazing' made from glass and display the relevant markings (see Note 1 and Table 1). 4. All other windows (including sunroofs internal glazed panels and removable glass panels) and side-screens must be 'Safety Glazing' (which may be made from glass, or from plastic) and display the relevant markings (see Note 1 and Table 1). 5. Windscreens and windows wholly or partly on either side of the driver's seat must allow a light transmission of at least 70% (see Note 2). |

Table 1

| Type of window | Relevant Markings (Mandatory) In addition to “e” approval | Markings (Not Allowed) |
|---|--|--|
| Windscreen | II -for ordinary laminated glass III -for treated laminated glass IV -for glass-plastics glazing. | V - safety glazing having a regular light transmittance less than 70 per cent. VI - double-glazed unit VII - uniformly-toughened glass which can only be used as windscreens for slow-moving vehicles which, by construction, cannot exceed 40 km/h. VIII -In the case of rigid plastic glazing. |
| Windows wholly or partly on either side of the driver’s seat (see Note 2) | VIII -In the case of rigid plastic glazing. In addition, the appropriate application will be signified by: /B for side, rear and roof glazing | V -in the case of safety glazing having a regular light transmittance less than 70 per cent. VII - uniformly-toughened glass which can only be used as windscreens for slow-moving vehicles which, by construction, cannot exceed 40 km/h. VIII -In the case of rigid plastic glazing. In addition, the appropriate application will be signified by: /A for forward facing panels, /C in locations where there is little or no chance of head impact. |
| Other windows and other glazed panels | None | VII - uniformly-toughened glass which can only be used as windscreens for slow-moving vehicles which, by construction, cannot exceed 40 km/h. |
| Break Glass exits | None | II -for ordinary laminated glass, III -for treated laminated glass, IV -for glass-plastics glazing |

These symbols may be marked down in a different format, i.e.: **II - IV**

Laminated-glass

Means a glass pane consisting of two or more layers of glass held together by one or more interlayers of plastics material; it may be:

- ‘**ordinary**’, when none of the layers of glass of which it is composed has been treated; **or**
- ‘**treated**’, when at least one of the layers of glass of which it is composed has been specially treated to increase its mechanical strength and to condition its fragmentation after shattering;

Glass-plastics glazing

Means a pane of laminated glass having one layer of glass and one or more layers of plastics material, at least one of which acts as interlayer. The plastics layer(s) shall be on the inner face when the glazing is fitted on the vehicle;

Rigid plastic glazing



Means a plastic glazing material which does not deflect vertically more than 50 mm in the flexibility test as shown in **UNECE Regulation 43**

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 22/01/2010 | Add new paragraph to the MOI |
| 3 | 30/11/2011 | Add exemption to application for armoured vehicles, removes all references to AV in Mol and RS, combine original notes 1 & 2 and renumber remaining note |
| 4 | 30/04/2012 | Add the text 'Example of Marking' to Mol |
| 5 | 11/02/2013 | Add reference to Note 2 in Table 1. |
| 6 | 10/04/2018 | Amend RS 5 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

46 Tyres

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Check each tyre for correct fitment, structure and that it has the correct markings to confirm compliance with the required standards. (Where it is not possible to check markings, a declaration will be required from the applicant).</p> <p>In the case of an Armoured vehicle, exemption from one or more of the provisions is permitted where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the Approval Authority that the special purpose of the vehicle makes it impossible to fully comply.</p> <p>Annex 1</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>EC Type Approval Mark</p> <p>Box should be a minimum of 12mm x 8mm</p>  <p>Letters and numbers, minimum of 4mm high</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>UNECE Type Approval Mark</p> <p>Circle with a minimum diameter of 12mm</p>  <p>Number 4mm high and serial number alongside</p> </div> </div> <p>Retreaded tyres must be approved and suitably e-marked according to UN Regulation No. 109, incorporating the manufacturers approval number as per the example below:</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Each tyre fitted to the vehicle, including any spare or temporary use spare, must have the correct approval marks (see Annex 1). 2. The tyre must also be marked with the following information :- Manufacturer's name or trademark, tyre size designation, category of use (as appropriate), speed category, load capacity index and tyre cross section (see Note 1). 3. Each of the tyres fitted to a vehicle, must have the same structure (see Note 2). 4. Each of the tyres fitted to any one axle must be of the same type (see Note 3). 5. Each tyre must have the correct load indices, speed ratings, and use markings, taking into account the vehicle to which it is fitted, and the type of use i.e. load and speeds the vehicle will be subject to (see Notes 1,2,3,4,5 & 6 also Tables 1,2 & 3). 6. Each wheel and tyre must have sufficient room to revolve so as to ensure that it is unlikely to foul on any part, taking into consideration the suspension and steering constraints provided by the manufacturer. 7. Tyres must be fitted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions as indicated on the sidewall of the tyre. |


| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>UNECE Type Approval mark</p>  <p>Note 1: Tyres with no category of use designation (special, snow tyre etc), will be deemed to be Normal Use Tyres.</p> <p>Note 2: Structure means the technical characteristics of the tyres carcass, such as diagonal or bias ply, bias belted, Radial, reinforced.</p> <p>Note 3: Type of tyre means tyres which do not differ in such essential respects as manufacturer’s name or trade mark, tyre size designation, category of use (special, snow tyre etc.), speed category, load capacity index and tyre cross section.</p> <p>Note 4: Restricted Speed Vehicle:- Operators may display a 50mph sticker on the rear of their vehicle, (They do not have to physically restrict the speed to 50mph) to claim the vehicle is one with restricted speed.</p> <p>Note 5: Local Service vehicle:- As the definition of local service concerns the way the vehicle is operated, a declaration from the presenter is required stating the vehicles intended use on a local service.</p> <p>Note 6: As an alternative to rejecting a vehicle for a tyre of inadequate load capacity, the applicant may choose to reduce the GB and Design weights to that of the tyre capacity. Note, altering the Design GVW may, on rare occasions, change the category of vehicle therefore impacting on other areas of the inspection. (The examiner must also ensure that the DVSA technical record is correct).</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. Where a vehicle has a GVW of 3500kg or less the grooves of the tread pattern must be at least 1.6mm in depth throughout a continuous band comprising of the centre $\frac{3}{4}$ of the original breadth of the tread pattern (excluding wear indicators). 9. Where a vehicle has a GVW exceeding 3500kg the grooves of the tread pattern must be at least 1mm in depth throughout a continuous band comprising of at least $\frac{3}{4}$ of the original breadth of the tread pattern (excluding wear indicators). |

Table 1

Speed Symbols (see Notes 4 & 5)

| Class of Vehicle | Permitted Speed (MPH) | Minimum Speed Symbol Required |
|--|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| A Bus (\leq 12 metres) other than a "Local Service Bus" or a "Restricted Speed Vehicle" | 70 | L |
| A Bus ($>$ 12 metres) other than a "Local service Bus" or a "Restricted Speed Vehicle" | 60 | J |
| A "Local Service Bus" or a "Restricted Speed Vehicle" | 50 | F |

Table 2

Alternative Speed Ratings (see Notes 4 & 5)

Certain Vehicles can be fitted with Tyres showing a different speed rating than those shown above but the maximum axle loads will be changed as shown below

| Class of Vehicle | Normal Speed Rating | Alternative Speed Rating | Change in Axle Load |
|--|---------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| A Bus (\leq 12 metres) other than a "Local service Bus" or a "Restricted Speed Vehicle" | L | J | -7% |
| | | K | -3% |
| A "Local Service Bus" or a "Restricted Speed Vehicle" | F | J or higher | +10% |
| A Bus in Class I or A. | F | J or higher | +15% |

Table 2A

| Speed category symbol | Corresponding speed | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-------|
| | (kph) | (mph) |
| F | 80 | 50 |
| G | 90 | 56 |
| J | 100 | 62 |
| K | 110 | 68 |
| L | 120 | 75 |
| M | 130 | 81 |
| N | 140 | 87 |
| P | 150 | 93 |
| Q | 160 | 99 |
| R | 170 | 105 |
| S | 180 | 112 |
| T # | 190 | 119 |
| U # | 200 | 124 |
| H # | 210 | 130 |
| V # | 240 | 149 |

These tyres are not commonly found on PSV. The H rated tyre may be found on small M2 vehicles, this will still only receive a +10% if fitted on a restricted speed vehicle (see Table 2 above).

Table 3

**LOAD CAPACITY INDEX TABLE
EXTRACT FROM ECE REG 54 : "LOAD INDEX" TABLE AMENDED TO SHOW AXLE
LOADS**

| LOAD INDEX | SINGLE Kg | DUAL Kg | LOAD INDEX | SINGLE Kg | DUAL Kg | LOAD INDEX | SINGLE Kg | DUAL Kg |
|------------|-----------|---------|------------|-----------|---------|------------|-----------|---------|
| 70 | 670 | 1340 | 110 | 2120 | 4240 | 150 | 6700 | 13400 |
| 71 | 690 | 1380 | 111 | 2180 | 4360 | 151 | 6900 | 13800 |
| 72 | 710 | 1420 | 112 | 2240 | 4480 | 152 | 7100 | 14200 |
| 73 | 730 | 1460 | 113 | 2300 | 4600 | 153 | 7300 | 14600 |
| 74 | 750 | 1500 | 114 | 2360 | 4720 | 154 | 7500 | 15000 |
| 75 | 774 | 1548 | 115 | 2430 | 4860 | 155 | 7750 | 15500 |
| 76 | 800 | 1600 | 116 | 2500 | 5000 | 156 | 8000 | 16000 |
| 77 | 824 | 1648 | 117 | 2570 | 5140 | 157 | 8250 | 16500 |
| 78 | 850 | 1700 | 118 | 2640 | 5280 | 158 | 8500 | 17000 |
| 79 | 874 | 1748 | 119 | 2720 | 5440 | 159 | 8750 | 17500 |
| 80 | 900 | 1800 | 120 | 2800 | 5600 | 160 | 9000 | 18000 |
| 81 | 924 | 1848 | 121 | 2900 | 5800 | 161 | 9250 | 18500 |
| 82 | 950 | 1900 | 122 | 3000 | 6000 | 162 | 9500 | 19000 |
| 83 | 974 | 1948 | 123 | 3100 | 6200 | 163 | 9750 | 19500 |
| 84 | 1000 | 2000 | 124 | 3200 | 6400 | 164 | 10000 | 20000 |
| 85 | 1030 | 2060 | 125 | 3300 | 6600 | 165 | 10300 | 20600 |
| 86 | 1060 | 2120 | 126 | 3400 | 6800 | 166 | 10600 | 21200 |
| 87 | 1090 | 2180 | 127 | 3500 | 7000 | 167 | 10900 | 21800 |
| 88 | 1120 | 2240 | 128 | 3600 | 7200 | 168 | 11200 | 22400 |
| 89 | 1160 | 2320 | 129 | 3700 | 7400 | 169 | 11600 | 23200 |
| 90 | 1200 | 2400 | 130 | 3800 | 7600 | 170 | 12000 | 24000 |
| 91 | 1230 | 2460 | 131 | 3900 | 7800 | 171 | 12300 | 24600 |
| 92 | 1260 | 2520 | 132 | 4000 | 8000 | 172 | 12600 | 25200 |
| 93 | 1300 | 2600 | 133 | 4120 | 8240 | 173 | 13000 | 26000 |
| 94 | 1340 | 2680 | 134 | 4240 | 8480 | 174 | 13400 | 26800 |
| 95 | 1380 | 2760 | 135 | 4360 | 8720 | 175 | 13800 | 27600 |
| 96 | 1420 | 2840 | 136 | 4480 | 8960 | 176 | 14200 | 28400 |
| 97 | 1460 | 2920 | 137 | 4600 | 9200 | 177 | 14600 | 29200 |
| 98 | 1500 | 3000 | 138 | 4720 | 9440 | 178 | 15000 | 30000 |
| 99 | 1550 | 3100 | 139 | 4860 | 9720 | 179 | 15500 | 31000 |
| 100 | 1600 | 3200 | 140 | 5000 | 10000 | | | |
| 101 | 1650 | 3300 | 141 | 5150 | 10300 | | | |
| 102 | 1700 | 3400 | 142 | 5300 | 10600 | | | |
| 103 | 1750 | 3500 | 143 | 5450 | 10900 | | | |
| 104 | 1800 | 3600 | 144 | 5600 | 11200 | | | |
| 105 | 1850 | 3700 | 145 | 5800 | 11600 | | | |
| 106 | 1900 | 3800 | 146 | 6000 | 12000 | | | |
| 107 | 1950 | 3900 | 147 | 6150 | 12300 | | | |
| 108 | 2000 | 4000 | 148 | 6300 | 12600 | | | |
| 109 | 2060 | 4120 | 149 | 6500 | 13000 | | | |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 03/05/2011 | Link Table 1 & 2 to Notes 4, 5 & 6 |
| 3 | 31/07/2011 | Remove original note 4 and renumber remaining notes, add additional text to table 1 and 2 in reference to minimum speed rating of tyres for vehicles greater than 12 metres in length |
| 4 | 11/02/2013 | Update axle load for a Bus in Class I, II or A / Restricted Speed Vehicle in Table 2 |
| 5 | 10/04/2018 | Revise RS & MOI add note 6 Amend table 2 |
| 6 | 01/09/2020 | New comment in Note 6 on reducing the Design GVW |
| 7 | 15/04/2024 | Revise Annex 1 to include requirements for retreaded tyres (TSE IVA N2N3 046 001) |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

47 Speed Limiter

Application: All Vehicles (except those designed to be used by the Armed forces, Fire and Rescue authority, Fire brigade, Ambulance or Police).

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Ensure the vehicle is fitted with a speed limiting device or speed limitation is achieved through the actual design of the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 1: Vehicles incapable of the speed where a speed limiter is required to be set (100 km/h) are exempt; this must be demonstrated by documentary evidence as listed below. Where vehicles are claiming exemption from the fitment of a speed limiter, evidence must be provided as listed below: (a) Documentary evidence from the manufacturer/converter that the vehicle is unable to reach the speed due to the overall gearing of the drive train; or (b) Documentary evidence from a speed limiter or Tachograph calibration centre; or (c) A declaration of exemption by nature of its use (i.e.: an emergency vehicle).</p> <p>Note 2: For the purposes of IVA, the whole of the vehicle cab is to be considered as the drivers compartment, this includes both door jambs. If fitted on a window and facing outward the details must be able to be read by a person of average height. A 'temporary' sticker is not acceptable.</p> <p>Note 3: The required maximum set speed for the UK is 100 km/h or 62 mph.</p> | <p>Vehicles claiming to be incapable of the speed where a speed limiter is required to be set</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence confirming that the vehicle is incapable of 100km/h (see Note 1). <p>Vehicles requiring a Speed Limiter</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. The vehicle must be fitted with a speed limiter. 3. Speed limiter wiring must be secure, and the speed limiter device and wiring connectors must be either sealed, or require special tools to access, so as to prevent unauthorised access to adjust the settings or interrupt the power supply 4. The speed limiter plate must be securely fitted in the driver's compartment (see Note 2). 5. The speed limiter plate must be clearly and indelibly marked with the speed at which the limiter has been set (the speed may be set in mph or km/h) (see Note 3). |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 31/07/2011 | Replace the word plate with plaque in RS4 & 5 and note 2 |
| 3 | 10/04/2018 | Reword RS4 & 5, revise Note 2. |
| 4 | 15/04/2024 | Add exemptions to the Application; Revise Note 1 (TSE IVA 0M2M3 047 002). |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

48 Masses and Dimensions

Application: All Vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----|--------|---------|--------|-------------|--------|---------|--------|-------------|--------|---------|--------|---------------------|--------|---------|--------|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure that the vehicle as presented has satisfactory evidence of compliance to the required standard and has not been subject to modifications that may invalidate any approval held.</p> <p>Dimensions: Check that the vehicle does not exceed the maximum authorised dimensions given in the table in Standard 1.</p> <p>Masses: The manufacturer's maximum permitted vehicle and axle weights (Design Weights) Shown on the manufacturers plate, must be compared to the maximum weights in Annex 2.</p> <p>Calculations using the method in Annex 3 must be carried out to verify that a vehicle fully laden with passengers and luggage will not exceed the manufacturer's permitted Gross Vehicle Weight, or axle weights.</p> <p>Turning Circle Requirements: Check that the vehicle is able to manoeuvre a complete circular trajectory of 360 degrees inside an area defined by two concentric circles, without any of the vehicles outermost points projecting outside the circumferences of the circles (See Figure 1). This must be completed on both steering locks The outer circle having a radius of 12.50 metres. The inner circle having a radius of 5.30 metres.</p> | <p>Dimensions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The vehicle must not exceed the maximum authorised dimensions (see Note 1) <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Category</th> <th>WIDTH (see Annex 1)</th> <th>LENGTH (see Annex 1)</th> <th>HEIGHT (see Annex 1)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>M2</td> <td>2550mm</td> <td>13500mm</td> <td>4570mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>M3 (2 Axle)</td> <td>2550mm</td> <td>13500mm</td> <td>4570mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>M3 (3 Axle)</td> <td>2550mm</td> <td>15000mm</td> <td>4570mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>M3 (Articulated)</td> <td>2550mm</td> <td>18750mm</td> <td>4570mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Masses:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The vehicle gross weight must not exceed the maximum authorised Masses (weights) set out in Annex 2. The GB axle weights must not exceed the maximum authorised Masses (weights) set out in Annex 2. The sum of the permitted axle weights must be equal to or greater than the maximum gross vehicle weight. Where an original axle design weight appears to have been exceeded evidence to increase the weights must be provided (see Note 2) | Category | WIDTH (see Annex 1) | LENGTH (see Annex 1) | HEIGHT (see Annex 1) | M2 | 2550mm | 13500mm | 4570mm | M3 (2 Axle) | 2550mm | 13500mm | 4570mm | M3 (3 Axle) | 2550mm | 15000mm | 4570mm | M3 (Articulated) | 2550mm | 18750mm | 4570mm |
| Category | WIDTH (see Annex 1) | LENGTH (see Annex 1) | HEIGHT (see Annex 1) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| M2 | 2550mm | 13500mm | 4570mm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| M3 (2 Axle) | 2550mm | 13500mm | 4570mm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| M3 (3 Axle) | 2550mm | 15000mm | 4570mm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| M3 (Articulated) | 2550mm | 18750mm | 4570mm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Masses and Dimensions 48

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>When the vehicle is stationary facing the circle establish a vertical plane and mark this on the ground alongside the vehicle (see Figure 2).</p> <p>When the vehicle enters the circle as described above no part of it shall move outside of this by prescribed limits in required standard 9. This procedure must be carried out on both sides.</p> <p>In the case of an articulated vehicle, the two rigid sections shall be aligned.</p> <p>Note 1: Where the vehicle is clearly within the maximum, a measurement is not needed.</p> <p>Note 2: Where a mass produced vehicle has been modified, or an axle has been used during the build of a new vehicle and the vehicle/axle weight appears to be heavier than the original vehicle/axle weight then evidence that the modifications justify the increased weights must be provided.</p> | <p>6. An M2 or M3 vehicle is not permitted to tow a trailer exceeding 3500kg, therefore the permissible Gross Train Weight (GTW) must not exceed the maximum permissible Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) by more than 3500kg. (For the purposes of this paragraph, the second part of an articulated bus where the two parts are inseparable without special tools is not deemed to be a trailer).</p> <p>7. The requirements for Mass distribution must be demonstrated by calculations. To show the calculated gross and axle weights, these weights must not exceed the design and GB weights shown on the manufacturer's plate. (See Annex 3 or 4 for guidance on the required calculation).</p> <p>Turning Circle Requirements:</p> <p>8. The motor vehicle is able to manoeuvre for a complete circular trajectory of 360 degrees within the defined area (with the exception of the protruding parts prescribed for the vehicle width shown in Annex 1) (See Figure 1).</p> <p>9. No part of the vehicle must move outside of the vertical plane by more than 0.6 metres (see Figure 2).</p> |

Figure 1

Vehicle must remain in between the two circles for a full 360 degrees

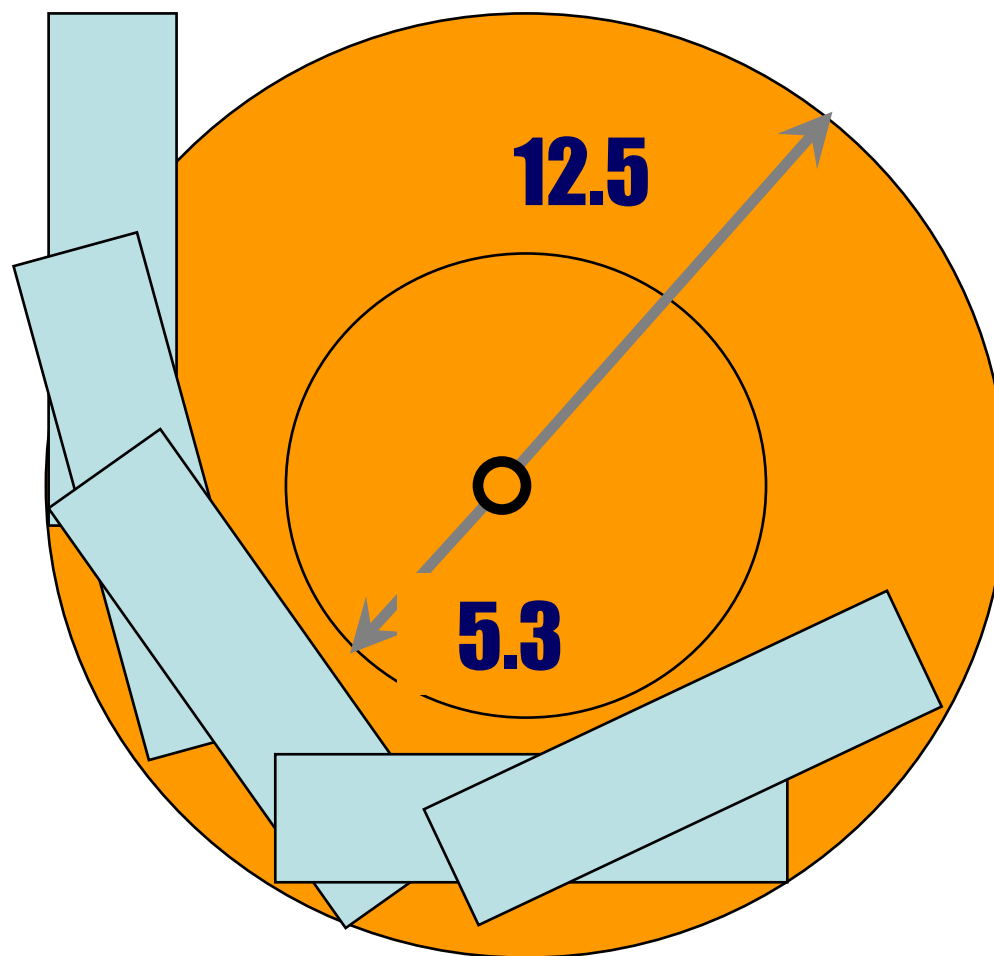
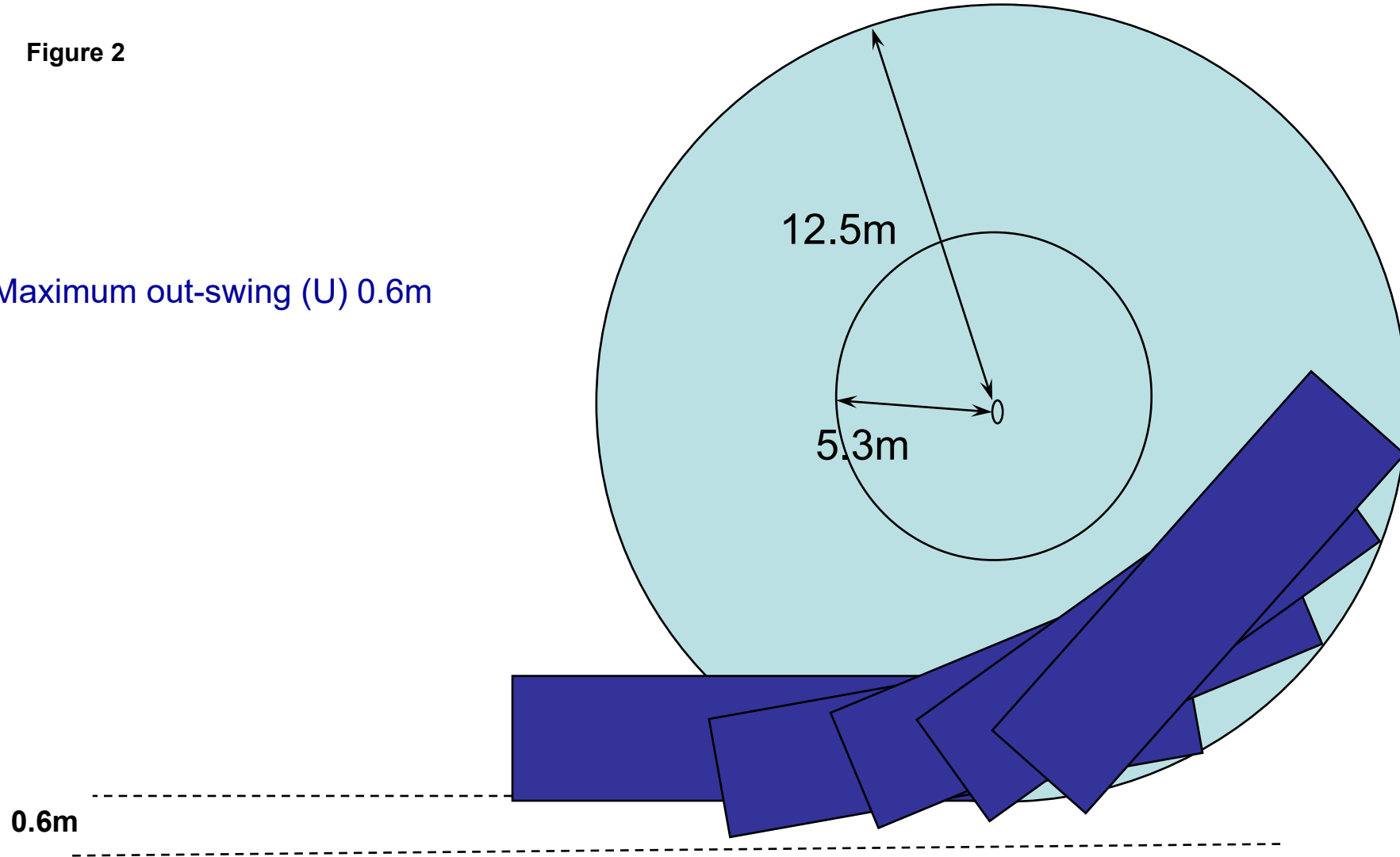


Figure 2

•Maximum out-swing (U) 0.6m



Annex 1 Items to be excluded from measurement of length and width

| A - Items to be excluded when measuring Length | B - Items to be excluded when measuring Width |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> —Wiper and washer devices, —Front or rear registration plates, —Lighting equipment, —Mirrors and other devices for indirect vision, —Access steps and hand-holds, —Lifting platforms, access ramps and similar equipment in <i>running order</i> (i.e. in the position they would be on a moving vehicle), not exceeding 300 mm, provided that the loading capacity of the vehicle is not increased, —Coupling devices, —Trolley booms of electrically-propelled vehicles, —External sun visors —Customs sealing devices and their protection, —Devices for securing the tarpaulin and their protection, —Ram rubbers and similar equipment, —Air-intake pipes, —Antennas used for radio, navigation, vehicle-to-vehicle, or vehicle-to-infrastructure communication, —Watching and detection aids including radars (e.g.: blind-spot radar sensors, etc.) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> —Tyre-pressure or tyre failure indicators, —Protruding flexible parts of wheelguards, —Lighting equipment, —Mirrors and other devices for indirect vision, —Access ramps, lift platforms and similar equipment (when undeployed and provided that they do not exceed 10 mm from the side of the vehicle, and the edges must be rounded to a radius of not less than 2.5 mm. The corners of any ramp facing forwards or rearwards must be rounded to a radius of not less than 5 mm) —Retractable steps, —The deflected part of the tyre walls immediately above the point of contact with the ground, —Handles and hinges of external lockers, —Trim protruding not more than 10mm from the bodywork, —Customs sealing devices and their protection, —Devices for securing the tarpaulin and their protection, —Service door lighting devices —Retractable lateral guidance devices on buses and coaches intended for use on guided bus systems, if not retracted, —Antennas used for radio, navigation, vehicle-to-vehicle, or vehicle-to-infrastructure communication, —Watching and detection aids including radars (e.g.: blind-spot radar sensors, etc.) |

| C - Items to be excluded when measuring Height |
|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> —Radio or radio-navigation antenna —Pantographs in their elevated position |

Annex 2 Maximum permitted weights in Great Britain and Northern Ireland

| M3 Vehicle | Maximum authorised weight | Maximum authorised weight for Alternative Fuelled vehicles | Maximum authorised weight for Zero Emission vehicles |
|--|---------------------------|--|--|
| Two-axle vehicle | 19500 kg | 19500 kg | 19500 kg |
| Three-axle rigid vehicle | 25000 kg | 26000 kg (see Note 1) | 27000 kg (see Note 1) |
| Three-axle rigid vehicle with a driving axle fitted with twin tyres and air suspension | 26000 kg | 27000 kg (see Note 1) | 28000 kg (see Note 1) |
| Three-axle articulated vehicles | 28000 kg | 29000 kg (see Note 1) | 30000 kg (see Note 1) |
| Single Axles | | Maximum Weight | |
| Single non-driving axle | | 10000 kg | |
| Driving Axle | | Maximum Weight | |
| Single axle | | 11500 kg | |
| Tandem axles | | The sum of the axle weights must not exceed | |
| Distance between axles is less than 1 metre | | 11500 kg | |
| from 1 metre and less than 1.3 metres | | 16000 kg | |
| from 1.3 metres and less than 1.8 metres | | 18000 kg, or 19000 kg (see Note 2) | |
| <p>Note 1 The figure for Alternative fuel and Zero emission vehicles can be increased up to the maximum specified by a figure equal to the increase in unladen mass compared to a conventional powertrain. For example, the added mass of a battery and electric motor for a hybrid, or the increase in mass for a CNG or hydrogen tank compared to the mass of a diesel tank. The payload and maximum axle loads do NOT increase. Written evidence of the additional mass for the alternative propulsion from the manufacturer is required.</p> <p>Note 2 Where there is one driving axle which is fitted with twin tyres and air suspension or suspension recognized as being equivalent, or where each driving axle is fitted with twin tyres and the maximum weight of each axle does not exceed 9500 kg, the weight of 18000 kg can be increased to 19000 kg</p> | | | |

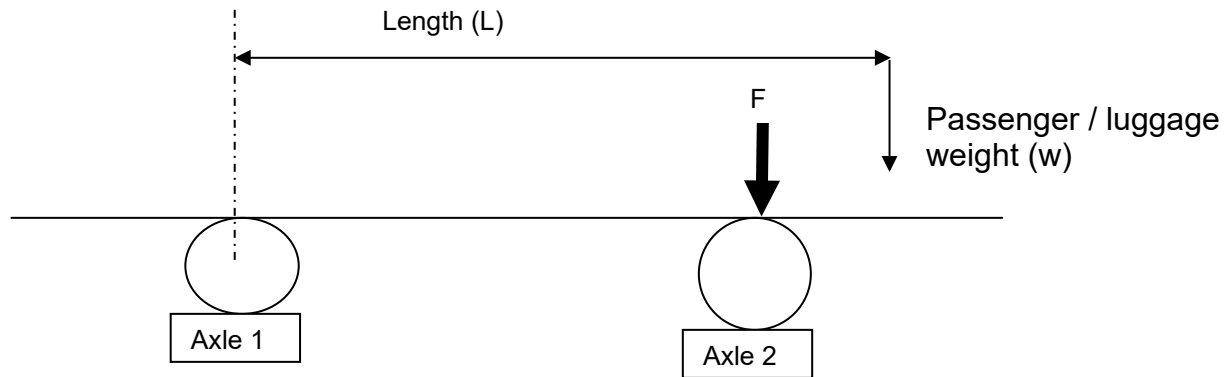
Masses and Dimensions 48

Note: Tandem axles (i.e.: 2 axles in formation), either steering axles (i.e.: front axles or rear axles) are to be assessed to the above requirements

Annex 3 Calculated laden Mass

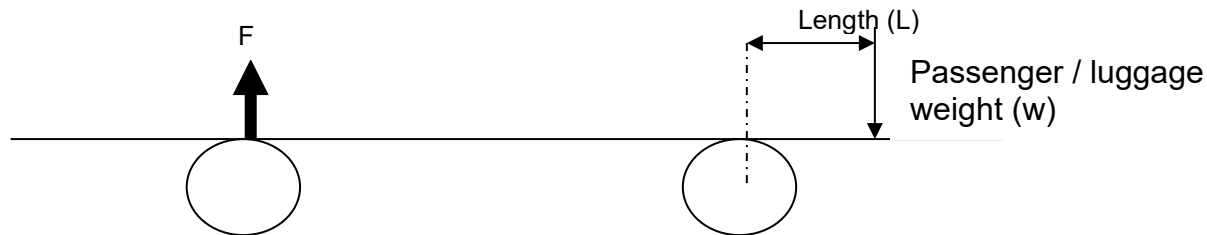
The calculation would have to be based on independent mass in running order weights for each axle, verified by a weight ticket from a calibrated weighbridge.

The calculation is then based on ‘moments around the axle centres for each seating / luggage weight position.



In the above diagram the imposed weight (F) on axle 2 would be (L) multiplied by (w) .

However, there is also a pivot point for axle 2 which would have the effect of reducing the weight on the front axle.



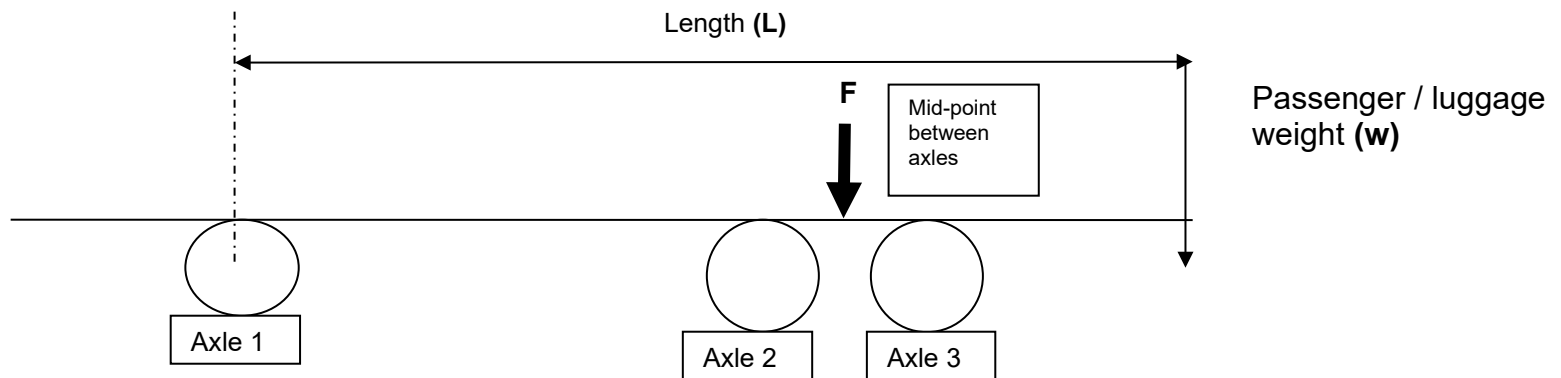
This process would have to be completed for each passenger / luggage position. (taken from the centre of the weight position).

Annex 4 Calculated laden Mass (3 Axles)

This calculation is based on independent mass in running order weights for single axles, and a combined weight for any closely spaced axles. All weights must be verified by a vehicle chassis number specific weight ticket from a calibrated weighbridge.

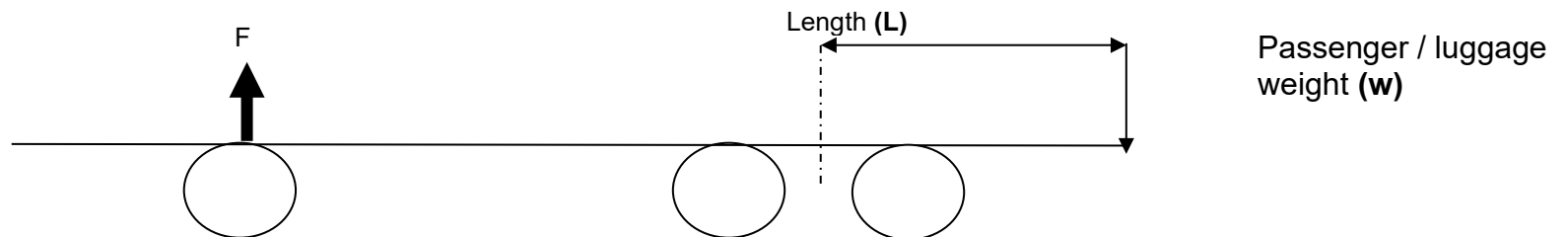
The calculation is then based on 'moments around axle centres for each seating / luggage weight position.

Note: For closely spaced axles, this is taken to be the centre point of the 2 axles.



In the above diagram the imposed weight (F) on axle 2 & 3 would be (L) multiplied by (w)

However, there is also a pivot point for the rear bogie which would have the effect of reducing the weight on the front axle



To aid this process that can be complex a proforma (see example below) and a calculation programme are available

Masses Calculation

| | | |
|--------------------------------|----|-------------------|
| Z Number | .. | |
| Chassis Number | .. | |
| Make | .. | |
| Model | .. | |
| Converter | .. | |
| ALL DISTANCES IN mm | | ALL WEIGHTS IN Kg |
| From Datum to Centre of Axle 1 | .. | 203 |
| Wheelbase | .. | 5540 |
| Mass in Running Order-Axle 1 | .. | 1495 |
| Mass in Running Order-Axle 2 | .. | 1189 |
| GB weight Axle 1 | | 1619 |
| GB weight Axle 2 | | 1609 |
| GB gross weight | | 3227 |
| DISTANCE | | |
| 1608 | .. | 68 |
| 3320 | .. | 544 |
| 6501 | .. | 63 |
| 0 | .. | 0 |
| 0 | .. | 0 |
| 0 | .. | 0 |
| Calculated Weight - Axle 1 | .. | 1775.06 |
| Calculated Weight - Axle 2 | .. | 1583.94 |
| Gross Calculated Laden | .. | 3359.00 |
| Weight | | |
| GB GW V CLW axle 1 | | Fail |
| GB GW V CLW axle 2 | | Pass |
| GB GW V CLW calc | | Fail |

Weight per person is as follows:-

| | |
|------------------------|-------|
| Driver | 75kg |
| Crew | 75kg |
| Passengers | |
| Classes I and A | 68kg, |
| Class II | 71kg, |
| Classes III and B | 71kg, |
| Wheelchair & Passenger | 100kg |

Luggage weight for luggage space only accessible from outside the vehicle:-

This weight is declared by the manufacturer and has to be displayed in the driver's area (see Section 52 D, RS 2).

If there is only one luggage area, then the distance to use for the calculation would be the centre of this area.

If there are multiple areas the manufacturer must declare the weight in each area. The relative centres of the luggage areas must be used for the distance.

Masses and Dimensions 48

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 22/01/2010 | Lengths of vehicle changed in Table 1 |
| 3 | 03/05/2011 | Convert note to bullet point 'c' in MOI |
| 4 | 30/11/2011 | Reword the text for using the weight calculation spreadsheet in RS7 |
| 5 | 30/04/2012 | Add new items to Annex 1 and wheelchair weight to table in Annex 3 |
| 6 | 10/04/2018 | Section Rewrite, Amend Max weight limit for alternative fuel vehicles |
| 7 | 01/07/2018 | Add Annex 4 |
| 8 | 15/04/2024 | Add items to Annex 1 Column A & B; Revise 'Access ramps' in Column B to align with other IVA manuals; Clarify items in Column C; Revise Annex 2 table to include 'Zero emission vehicles' |
| | | |
| | | |

50 Couplings

Application: All Vehicles (where fitted)

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | |
|--|--|----------------|----------------|--------|--------|--|--|
| <p>This section applies to all devices that have been fitted post vehicle manufacture and usually comprise of a frame attached to the vehicle structure. It does not apply to types that are integral with the vehicle as supplied or fitted by the chassis manufacturer.</p> <p>An assessment must be made of the coupling load bearing structure to which the device is attached to ensure it and any fixings are of sufficient strength. This may be by either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • approval relevant to the vehicle, or • visual examination and assessment of the surrounding area and fixings <p>Towing attachments that do not incorporate a 50mm ball are not permitted e.g. Military style hook type fittings and pin types.</p> <p>Check for the correct ‘e’ or “E” markings and that the coupling device is installed correctly in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions,</p> <p>Check installation height of the coupling and that there is sufficient clearance around it to enable safe operation.</p> <p>Note 1: Device means Towing frame, ball, and associated components</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Any towing attachment fitted must incorporate a 50mm diameter ball. 2. The coupling device must bear an ‘e’ or ‘E’ mark to ensure the construction of the coupling device meets the appropriate approval criteria. 3. The coupling load bearing structure, to which the coupling is attached, and/or any fixings used, must be of sufficient strength and in accordance with the relevant approval. 4. The coupling device(s) must be securely mounted to the vehicle to withstand the loads likely to be imposed on it in accordance with the manufacturers’ instructions (see Note 1). 5. The coupling ball must be installed to the correct height in table 1 (M2 under 3500kg only). 6. The vehicle must be provided with a Gross Train Weight, which must satisfy the requirements of Section 48 (Masses and Dimensions). <p>Table 1</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Minimum Height</th> <th>Maximum Height</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>375 mm</td> <td>500 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">Coupling height requirements measured to the top of the ball from the ground</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Minimum Height | Maximum Height | 375 mm | 500 mm | Coupling height requirements measured to the top of the ball from the ground | |
| Minimum Height | Maximum Height | | | | | | |
| 375 mm | 500 mm | | | | | | |
| Coupling height requirements measured to the top of the ball from the ground | | | | | | | |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/04/2010 | Increase the maximum height in Table 1, (The vehicle should be fully laden when the measurement is taken, as we only inspect un-laden vehicles we have added in a larger tolerance). |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Reword the way in which we measure the ball height, Remove original RS5 and renumber standards |
| 4 | 03/05/2011 | Tolerance removed |
| 5 | 31/07/2011 | Add additional text to RS4 |
| 6 | 11/02/2013 | Amend RS1 |
| 7 | 10/04/2018 | Add MOI & RS 3 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

51 Flammability

Application: M3 Class III & IIS (only applies to the Interior)

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>Ensure the vehicle as presented is accompanied by satisfactory evidence to the required standard.</p> <p>In the case of an Ambulance or Hearse, the requirements according to the category of the base or incomplete vehicle based on maximum mass shall apply to the cab.</p> <p>The vehicle must be accompanied by one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. An approval to Directive 95/28/EC, or UNECE Regulation 118, covering all materials and glues used. b. A test report from a technical service covering, section 7 of Annex I, of Directive 95/28/EC, covering all materials and glues used. c. A written declaration supplied by the Manufacturer, with adequate supporting evidence of compliance covering all materials and glues used This will need to be some form of evidence of compliance e.g. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Purchase orders for some the glues and materials used indicating the materials are compliant. • A physical check of components accessible and bearing approval marks. • Declarations / evidence of component compliance from the appropriate component manufacturer (e.g.: seat manufacturer). <p>Note: This is a random sample check on the declaration and evidence and not a check of all components used.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence of compliance with the required standard for “Flammability” |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52 Scope

This section applies to every M2 or M3 vehicle that does not hold an Approval to 2001/85EC (Special provisions for vehicles used for the carriage of passengers comprising more than eight seats in addition to the driver's seat.) **or UN ECE Regulation 107** (Uniform provisions concerning the approval of category M2 or M3 vehicles with regard to their general construction) **for the particular vehicle type as presented.**

Exemptions:

Vehicles used for the secure transport of persons, for example prisoners;

Armoured vehicles: - Exemption from one or more of the provisions is permitted, where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the approval Authority that the special purpose of the vehicle makes it impossible to comply.

The requirements of this section apply to the following vehicles only to the extent that they are compatible with their intended use and function:

Vehicles designed for use by police, security, and armed forces;

Vehicles which contain some seating intended solely for use when the vehicle is stationary,. Examples of these include mobile libraries, mobile churches, and mobile hospitality units. The seats in such vehicles which are designated for use when the vehicle is not in motion must be clearly identified to users.

Vehicle Definitions

“**Vehicle**” Means a vehicle of categories M2 or M3

For vehicles having a capacity exceeding 22 passengers in addition to the driver, there are three classes of vehicles:

Class I Vehicles constructed with areas for standing passengers, to allow frequent passenger movement;

Class II Vehicles constructed principally for the carriage of seated passengers, and designed to allow the carriage of standing passengers in the gangway and/or in an area which does not exceed the space provided for two double seats;

Class III Vehicles constructed exclusively for the carriage of seated passengers.

Class IIIS A Class III vehicle specifically designed for the carriage of school children

Note: A vehicle may be regarded as belonging in more than one Class. In such a case it may be approved for each Class to which it corresponds;

For vehicles having a capacity not exceeding 22 passengers in addition to the driver, there are two classes of vehicles:

Class A Vehicles designed to carry standing passengers; a vehicle of this Class has seats and shall have provision for standing passengers

Class B Vehicles not designed to carry standing passengers; a vehicle of this Class has no provision for standing passengers.

“**Articulated vehicle**” Means a vehicle which consists of two or more rigid sections which articulate relative to one another; the passenger compartments of each section intercommunicate so that passengers can move freely between them; the rigid sections are permanently connected so that they can only be separated by an operation involving facilities which are normally only found in a workshop.

“**Double-deck vehicle**” Means a vehicle where the spaces provided for passengers are arranged, at least in one part, in two superimposed levels, and spaces for standing passengers are not provided in the upper deck.

“**Double-decker articulated vehicle**” Means a vehicle which consists of two or more rigid sections which articulate relative to one another; the passenger compartments of each section intercommunicate on at least one deck so that passengers can move freely between them; the rigid sections are permanently connected so that they can only be separated by an operation involving facilities which are normally only found in a workshop.

“Low-floor bus” Is a vehicle of Class I, II or A in which at least 35 % of the area available for standing passengers (or in its forward section in the case of articulated vehicles, or in its lower deck in the case of double-decker vehicles) forms an area without steps and includes access to at least one service door.

“Trolleybus” Means a vehicle electrically driven by energy from external, overhead contact wires. For the purposes of this Regulation, it also includes such vehicles having an additional internal means of propulsion (dual mode vehicles) or having a means of temporary external guidance (guided trolleybuses).”

“Vehicle without a roof” Means a vehicle without roof over all or part of its deck. In the case of a double-decked vehicle this shall be the upper deck. Space for standing passengers shall not be provided on any deck without a roof, independently of the class of vehicle.

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 11/02/2013 | Amend first paragraph |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52 Definitions

Access passage Means the space extending inwards into the vehicle from the service door up to the outermost edge of the upper step (edge of the gangway), intercommunication staircase or half-staircase. Where there is no step at the door, the space to be considered as access passage shall be that which is measured according to the requirements in section (521) up to a distance of 300 mm from the starting position of the inner face of the test gauge."

Automatically-operated service-door Means a power-operated service door which can be opened (other than by means of emergency controls) only after a control is operated by a passenger and after activation of the controls by the driver, and which closes again automatically.

Boarding device Means a device to facilitate wheelchair access to vehicles, such as lifts, ramps, kneeling suspension etc.

Continuous seat Means a seat where there is no gap between seating positions; in the case of single seats which butt up against each other, for IVA purposes, they would also be considered a "continuous seat".

Demountable seat Means a seat that can be easily detached from the vehicle.

Double door Means a door affording two, or the equivalent of two, access passages;

Double or multiple window Means an emergency window which, when divided into two or more parts by imaginary vertical line(s) (or plane(s)), exhibits two or more parts respectively, each of which complies as to dimensions and access with the requirements applicable to a normal emergency window;

Driver's compartment Means the space intended for driver's exclusive use except in the case of an emergency and containing the driver's seat, the steering wheel, controls, instruments, and other devices necessary for driving or operating the vehicle.

Driver operated service door Means a service door which normally is opened and closed by the driver.

Emergency door Means a door intended for use by passengers as an exit only exceptionally and in particular in an emergency;

Emergency window Means a window, not necessarily glazed, intended for use as an exit by passengers in an emergency only.

Emergency exit Means an emergency door, emergency window or escape hatch.

Escape hatch Means an opening in the roof or the floor intended for use as an emergency exit by passengers in an emergency only;

Exit Means a service door, intercommunication staircase, half-staircase, or emergency exit;

Floor or deck Means that part of the bodywork whose upper surface supports standing passengers, the feet of seated passengers and the driver and any crew member, and may support the seat mountings;

Front and rear Means the front or rear of the vehicle according to the normal direction of travel and the terms; "forward", "foremost", "rearward" and "rearmost" etc. shall be construed accordingly.

Gangway Means the space providing access by passengers from any seat or row of seats or each special area for wheelchair users to any other seat or row of seats or each special area for wheelchair users or to any access passage from or to any service door or intercommunication staircase and any area for standing passengers;

It does not include:

1. The space extending 300 mm in front of any seat, except where a sideways-facing seat is situated above a wheel arch, in which case this dimension may be reduced to 225 mm
2. The space above the surface of any step or staircase (except where the surface of the step is contiguous with that of a gangway or access passageway).
3. Any space which affords access solely to one seat or row of seats or a facing pair of transverse seats or row of seats. **Note:** A horse shoe type rear seat, which has seating area only, is defined as a single row of seats

Half staircase is a staircase from the upper deck which terminates in an emergency door.

Intercommunication staircase Means a staircase which allows communication between the upper and lower decks.

Kneeling system Means a system which lowers and lifts totally or partially the body of a vehicle relative to the normal position of travel.

Lift Means a device or system with a platform that can be raised and lowered to provide passenger access between the floor of a passenger compartment and the ground or kerb.

Mass of the vehicle in running order Means the mass of the unladen vehicle with bodywork, and with coupling device in the case of a towing vehicle, in running order, (including coolant, oils, 90 per cent fuel, 100 per cent other liquids except used waters, tools, spare wheel and driver (75 kg), and, for buses and coaches, the mass of the crew member (75 kg) if there is a crew seat in the vehicle.

Member of the crew Means a person assigned to operate as a co-driver or the possible assistant.

Passenger Means a person, other than the driver or a member of the crew;

Passenger compartment Means a space intended for passengers' use excluding any space occupied by fixed appliances such as bars, kitchenettes, toilets, or baggage/goods compartments.

Passenger with reduced mobility Means all passengers who have a difficulty when using public transport, such as disabled people (including people with sensory and intellectual impairments, and wheelchair users, people with limb impairments, people of small stature, people with heavy luggage, elderly people, pregnant women, people with shopping trolleys, and people with children (including children seated in pushchairs).

Portable ramp Means a ramp that may be detached from the vehicle structure and capable of being deployed by a driver or crew member.

Power-operated service door Means a service door which is operated exclusively by energy other than muscular energy and the opening and closing of which, if not automatically operated, is remotely controlled by the driver or a member of the crew.

Priority seat Means a seat with additional space for a passenger with reduced mobility and marked accordingly.

Ramp Means a device to bridge the gap between the floor of a passenger compartment and the ground or kerb. In its position for use, it includes any surface that may move as part of the ramp deployment or be available for use only when the ramp is in its deployed position and over which a wheelchair is intended to travel.

Separate compartment Means a space in the vehicle which may be occupied by passengers or crew when the vehicle is in use and which is separated from any other passenger or crew space, except where any partition allows passengers to see into the next passenger space and is connected by a gangway without doors.

Service door Means a door intended for use by passengers in normal circumstances with the driver seated:

Service-door lighting Means a lighting device(s) of the vehicle designed to illuminate the exterior vicinity of service doors and wheels.

Sliding door Means a door which can be opened or closed only by sliding it along one or more rectilinear or approximately rectilinear rails.

Soft Rubber Edge Means Soft rubber section fitted to a door, specifically designed to allow the safe extraction of a trapped hand without the possibility of damage to the hand. Rubber edges designed to form only a weather seal may not be specifically deep in section to comply

Starting prevention device Means a device which prevents the vehicle being driven away from rest when a door is not fully closed

Superstructure Means the part of the bodywork which contributes to the strength of the vehicle in the event of a roll-over accident

Technically permissible maximum laden mass Means the maximum mass of the vehicle based on its construction and performance, stated by the manufacturer. The technically permissible maximum laden mass is used to determine the vehicle category.

Wheelchair user Means a person who due to infirmity or disability uses a wheelchair for mobility.

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Add new definition 'Soft Rubber Edge' |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Add new definition for 'Gangway' |
| 4 | 10/04/2018 | New definition for 'Continuous seats'. |
| 5 | 15/04/2024 | Add definition of horse shoe type seating to Item 3 in 'Gangway' |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

52A Tilt

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>This section does not apply to a vehicle of Class B, with no more than 16 seated passengers.</p> <p>One of the following forms of evidence is required covering the vehicle as presented</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An approval to UNECE Regulation 107.02. • An approval to 2001/85EC. • A witnessed (By an accepted authority) Stability Test Report to the criteria laid down in the form titled “Stability Test Report for a Public Service Vehicle to UNECE Regulation 107.02 Criteria”. • A calculation report (based on a physical stability test), verified by an approval authority, and based on the method given in UNECE Regulation 107.02. <p>or</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For complete single deck vehicles, an installed electronic stability function that has been approved to UN/ECE Regulation 13.11. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory evidence of a successful tilt test covering all the features present. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 10/04/2018 | MOI amended to clarify complete single deck vehicle requirements. |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52B Strength of Superstructure

Application: M2 & M3 Class II & III (Single Deck Vehicles only)

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An approval to UN ECE Reg 66. • A test report from a technical service covering the technical requirements in UN/ECE Reg 66. • An approval to UNECE Regulation 107.02. • An approval to 2001/85EC. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory documentary evidence of Strength of Superstructure. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|-----------------|-------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 30/04/2012 | Add 'Single Deck Vehicles only' to Application |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52C Area Available for Passengers

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>There must be sufficient seating and in addition adequate space for standing passengers.</p> <p>Note 1: This number may be reduced by 10 % in Class I vehicles (excluding the upper deck).</p> <p>Note 2: “Total floor area available for passengers and crew” is the total passenger compartment floor area, (measured longitudinally between the face of the dash facing the passenger compartment to the front face of the rearmost seating position backrest and transversely between the inner face of the opposing side walls of the vehicle) less the following areas:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) The area of the driver's compartment. b) The area of steps at doors and the area of any other step with a depth of less than 300 mm, and the area swept by the door and its mechanism when it is operated. c) The area of any part over which the vertical clearance is less than 1 350 mm measured from the floor disregarding permitted intrusion specified in section 52 P item 7. (In the case of vehicles of Class A or B, this dimension is reduced to 1 200 mm). d) For articulated vehicles, the area of any part of the vehicle to which access by passengers is prevented as defined in section 52 Y item 4. | <p>All Classes</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Any floor area in the vehicle claimed for use by passengers or crew must meet the requirements set out in Note 2. <p>Class I, II, A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. There must be at least a number of seating places, intended for use whilst the vehicle is in motion, (other than folding seats), which conform to the requirements of section 52P, on each deck, at least equal to the number of square metres of total floor area on that deck available for passengers and crew (if any) rounded down to the nearest whole number (see Notes 1 & 2). 3. For a class I and class A vehicle there must be at least 0.125 square metres of “available space” per standing passenger marked on the vehicle in accordance with section 52 D required standard 1 (see Notes 3 & 4). 4. For a class II vehicles there must be at least 0.15 square metres of “available space” per standing passenger marked on the vehicle in accordance with section 52 D required standard 1 (see Notes 3 & 4). |

Area Available for Passengers 52C

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|-------------------|
| <p>e) The area of any space reserved solely for the carriage of goods or baggage.</p> <p>f) The area required to provide a clear working area at serveries.</p> <p>g) The floor area occupied by any staircase, half-staircase, intercommunication staircase including the surface of any associated step/s.</p> <p>Note 3: In the case of a vehicle equipped with a variable seating capacity (i.e.: tip up seats, wheelchair area for dual use, etc.) the area available for standing passengers must be determined for each of the declared variations (see section 52D) as applicable, marked on the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 4: The ‘available space’ for standing passengers is the “Total floor area available for passengers and crew” less the following areas.</p> <p>a) The area of all parts of the floor in which the longitudinal slope exceeds 8% or 5% in the case of the plane perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of symmetry of vehicle.</p> <p>b) The area of all parts which are not accessible to a standing passenger when all the seats are occupied. (with the exception of folding seats).</p> <p>c) The area of all parts where the clear height above the floor is less than the gangway height specified in section 52 M items 1, 2, or 3 as applicable. (handholds shall not be taken into account in this connection).</p> <p>d) The area forward of a transverse vertical plane passing through the centre of the seating surface of the driver's seat (in its rearmost position).</p> | |

Area Available for Passengers 52C

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|-------------------|
| <p>e) The area 300 mm in front of all non folding seats, except where a sideways-facing seat is situated above the wheel arch where the area is reduced to 225mm.</p> <p>f) The area covered by a folding seat and 300 mm in front of the folding seat when calculating the reduced standee mode except where a sideways-facing seat is situated above the wheel arch where the area is reduced to 225mm.</p> <p>g) Any surface, on which it is not possible to place a rectangle of 400 mm × 300 mm.</p> <p>h) In vehicles of Class II, any area outside of the gangway and/or, an area which does not exceed the space provided for two double seats.</p> <p>i) For double deck vehicles any area on the upper deck.</p> <p>j) The surface of a wheelchair space when considered occupied by a wheelchair user.</p> <p>k) The surface of any wheelchair space(s) dedicated solely for the use of wheelchair user(s).</p> | |

Area Available for Passengers 52C

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 10/04/2018 | Amend Application header, insert new RS1 and reformat section |
| 3 | 15/04/2024 | Clarification of Note 1 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52D Markings

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|-----------|--------|-------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--|--|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure that all relevant safety information markings are present and meet the required Standards.</p> <p>Note 1: For maximum number of standing passengers, refer to area available for passenger section and manufacturers documentation.</p> <p>Note 2: The number of seated places includes all seats designed for use when the vehicle is in motion including any marked for crew use but excludes the driver.</p> <p>Examples: (both layouts are acceptable for IVA)</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;">Seated 45</td> <td style="width: 50%;">Seated 46</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Crew 1</td> <td>Standing 18</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Standing 18</td> <td>Wheelchairs 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wheelchairs 2</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p>Note 3: Pictograms must be clear and state the obvious intention to an intended user. ‘Emergency Exit’ can be used as a generic marking for any emergency exit, and any exit as defined in this manual can be labelled as such (i.e.: Emergency door, Emergency Window, Escape Hatch, etc.).</p> <p>Note 4: Includes ‘Break Glass’ hammers.</p> <p>Note 5: All external markings should be of a type that will not be adversely affected by varying weather conditions. Pictograms indicating a required movement shall, where appropriate, show an arrow pointing in the direction of motion. Where a rotational movement is required, a curved arrow shall be used.</p> | Seated 45 | Seated 46 | Crew 1 | Standing 18 | Standing 18 | Wheelchairs 2 | Wheelchairs 2 | | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle must be marked clearly in a manner visible on the inside in the vicinity of the front service door in letters or pictograms not less than 10mm high and numbers not less than 12mm high, with the following information (see Note 1). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The maximum number of seating places the vehicle is designed to carry (see Note 2). • The maximum number of standing places, if any, the vehicle is designed to carry. • The maximum amount of wheelchairs which the vehicle is designed to carry, if any. 2. Where a vehicle has baggage compartments not accessible from inside the vehicle, or is equipped for the carriage of baggage on the roof, the vehicle must be clearly marked (in letters or pictograms not less than 10mm high, and numbers not less than 12mm high) in the drivers area with the mass of the baggage that can be carried when the vehicle is loaded with the maximum numbers of passengers and crew and the vehicle is not exceeding the technically permissible maximum mass, or the permissible mass of any axle. 3. All emergency exits must be marked inside and outside the vehicle by Pictograms, or an inscription that reads ‘Emergency Exit’ (see Notes 3 & 5). |
| Seated 45 | Seated 46 | | | | | | | | |
| Crew 1 | Standing 18 | | | | | | | | |
| Standing 18 | Wheelchairs 2 | | | | | | | | |
| Wheelchairs 2 | | | | | | | | | |

Markings 52D

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|---|
| | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. All emergency controls of service doors and emergency exits must be marked as such inside and outside the vehicle either by a representative symbol or by a clearly worded inscription that is placed so as to be clearly associated with the control (see Notes 4 & 5).<li>5. All emergency controls of service door/s and emergency exit/s must be marked on or close to the emergency control with the method of operation of that control, including any points of manual application, i.e.: 'Push' marked on a specific part of the door (see Note 5). |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/04/2010 | “Front” has been added to RS1 and RS 2 has been totally reworded to make clear that you only access baggage compartments “not accessible from inside the vehicle” |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Remove original note 2 and re-number notes |
| 4 | 30/04/2012 | Remove original note 3, and re-number notes, add new note 5 |
| 5 | 11/02/2013 | Add examples to Note 2, update dimensions in RS1 and amend RS4 |
| 6 | 15/04/2024 | Revise RS3, Note 3, and Note 5 to incorporate Pictograms |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

52E Protection against Fire Risks

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>The vehicle will be inspected to ensure as far as practicable, that adequate precautions against the risk of fire have been taken during the construction of the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 1: Where there is doubt over the suitability of the materials, evidence of compliant materials may be gained from the material manufacturer, or the same material is used in an engine compartment, of an approved vehicle to Directive 2001/85 EC/107:02</p> <p>Note 2: This can be by either, a suitable layout of the engine compartment or by the provision of drainage orifices.</p> <p>Note 3: Examples of such a heat source include a device designed to absorb the energy liberated when a vehicle is descending a long gradient, e.g. a retarder, or a device for heating the interior of the body, except for a device functioning by warm water circulation.</p> <p>Note 4: For the purposes of this section, a flammable material is considered to be one which is not designed to withstand the temperatures likely to be encountered in that location.</p> <p>Note 5: Even when sealed prop shaft universal joints are present, grease shields are still required.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle must have no flammable material, and/or material likely to become impregnated with fuel, lubricant, or other combustible material within the engine compartment, unless the material is covered by an impermeable sheet (see Note 1). 2. The accumulation of fuel, lubricating oil, or any other combustible material in any part of the engine compartment, must be prevented (see Note 2). 3. A heat resisting partition must be fitted between the engine and rest of vehicle. All fixings clips, gaskets, etc. used in conjunction with the partition must be fire resistant. 4. A heat resisting partition must be fitted between a heat source other than the engine and the rest of the vehicle (see Note 3). 5. Any heating device (operating other than by hot water) inside the passenger compartment must be encased in material, designed to resist the temperatures generated by the device. 6. Flammable material within 100mm of the exhaust system, any high voltage electrical equipment, or other significant source of heat, must be adequately shielded (see Note 4). 7. Exhaust system or other significant heat sources must have adequate shielding to prevent grease or other flammable materials contacting them (see Notes 4 & 5). |

Protection Against Fire Risks 52E

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/04/2010 | Add note 5 and reference that to RS 7 |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Add 107:02 to Note 1 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52F Electrical Equipment

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Batteries</p> <p>This inspection is to ensure that the vehicles batteries are secured in a suitable space and the terminals are protected.</p> <p>Note 1: The accessibility may require the use of tools.</p> <p>Electrical equipment and wiring.</p> <p>This inspection is to ensure all electrical cables are suitable for their purpose, insulated, secured, and where required protected, all required circuits contain a fuse, and that any circuit above 100 volts RMS is suitably protected.</p> <p>Note 2: In the engine compartment, particular attention shall be paid to their suitability to withstand the environmental temperature and the effects of all likely contaminants.</p> <p>Note 3: This check is for obvious signs that a cable is not suitable.</p> <p>Note 4: They may, however, be protected by a common fuse or a common circuit-breaker, provided that its rated capacity is not exceeded.</p> <p>Note 5: Evidence that all required circuits are protected, may be in the form of a manufacturer’s declaration, wiring diagram etc. and a check for any obvious unprotected circuits.</p> | <p>Batteries</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All batteries must be secure and easily accessible (see Note 1). 2. Battery compartments must be separated from the drivers and passenger compartments and ventilated to outside air. 3. All battery terminals must be protected against short circuit, by fitment of individual protective covers on all terminals. <p>Electrical equipment and wiring.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. All Cables must be well insulated. Cables and electrical equipment must be able to withstand the temperature and humidity conditions to which they are exposed (see Note 2). 5. All cables must be suitable for the current imposed, taking into account its mode of installation and the maximum ambient temperature (see Note 3). 6. All electrical circuits except those feeding the starter, the ignition circuit (positive ignition), the glow-plugs, the engine-stopping device, the charging circuit, and the battery earth connection, must include a fuse or a circuit breaker (see Notes 4, 5 & 6). 7. Electrical cables must be well protected and held securely in position in such a way that they cannot be damaged by cutting, abrasion or chafing. |

Electrical Equipment 52F

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>Note 6: In the case where electronics are incorporated, these circuits may be protected by protection devices integrated into the electronic components or systems. In such a case, the manufacturer must give a declaration as to the function of the system.</p> <p>Note 7: This paragraph does not apply to high tension ignition circuits or to self-contained circuits within a unit of equipment on the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 8: A compliant switch must be capable of disconnecting all such circuits from the main electrical supply, in each pole of that supply, which is not electrically connected to earth, and must be located inside the vehicle in a position readily accessible to the driver, provided that no such isolating switch shall be capable of disconnecting any electrical circuit supplying the mandatory external vehicle lights.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8. All electrical cables must be located so that no part can make contact with any fuel line or any part of the exhaust system, or be subjected to excessive heat, unless suitable special insulation and protection is provided, as for example to a solenoid operated exhaust valve. <li>9. All circuits where the voltage exceeds 100 V RMS (root-mean-square) must be fitted with a compliant, manually operated, isolating switch (see Notes 7 & 8). |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/10/2010 | Reword note 4 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

52G Fire Extinguisher and First Aid

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure there is adequate space provide for the fitment of Fire Extinguishers and First Aid kits.</p> <p>Note 1: dm³ = 1000 cubic centimetres.</p> <p>Note 2: The space could be open space or a recess or box as long as a fire extinguisher or first aid kit could be mounted there.</p> <p>Note 3: Location markings only apply where fire extinguishers or first aid kits are not in open view.</p> | <p>Single deck vehicles</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Space must be provided to allow for the fitting of at least one fire extinguisher, being located near the driver's seat. In vehicles of Class A or B the space must not be less than 8 dm³ and in Class I, II or III not less than 15 dm³ (see Notes 1 & 2). <p>Double deck vehicles</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Space must be provided to allow for at least the fitting of two fire extinguishers, one being near the driver's seat, and one on the upper deck. Each space must be not less than 15 dm³ (see Notes 1 & 2). <p>All Classes</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Space must be provided for the fitting of one or more first-aid kits. The space provided must be not less than 7 dm³, the minimum dimension must not be less than 80 mm (see Notes 1 & 2). 4. Where any fire extinguisher or first aid kit, is secured, not in open view, or behind an anti-theft screen, (e.g. in an internal locker or behind breakable glass) then their position must be marked and means provided where required to extract them (see Note 3). |

Fire Extinguisher and First Aid 52G

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/10/2010 | Change text in Note 1 |
| 3 | 11/02/2013 | Add links to Notes in RS2 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52H Number and Location of Exits

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure the vehicle has the required number of service/emergency doors and other emergency exits, including their correct position within the vehicle.</p> <p>Additional doors, over and above the minimum number mandated, will be classed as either service doors or emergency doors unless they are “put out of use”. This means that signage or marking alone would not be adequate - it’s use should be physically obstructed, for example by removal of handles, welding over cover plates, or by fitting permanent fixtures that cannot be removed by the use of normally available tools. Consideration must be given to Note 1.</p> <p>Note 1: This does not preclude the provision of a door in the rear face of a vehicle for use by wheelchair passengers, or service doors in the rear face of a vehicle in class A or B. Or the provision of one or more additional service doors on the opposite side of the vehicles in the case of vehicles designed for use in circumstances which require loading/unloading on both sides. Examples of such circumstances include vehicles for airside use at airports, vehicles for use on multimodal transport systems using island platforms, or vehicles which cross borders to countries which do not drive on the same side of the road as the country in which the vehicle is to be licensed for operation. Vehicles so equipped shall be provided with control(s) which allow the driver to inhibit normal operation of the doors which are not currently in use.</p> | <p>All classes</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A minimum of two doors must be fitted consisting of either two service doors or one service door and one emergency door. Every double-deck vehicle shall have two doors on the lower deck (see Note 7). 2. Service door/s must be on the nearside of a vehicle (see Note1). <p>Class I, II, III and A and a Class B vehicle not complying with standards 23 to 26</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. At least one service door must be in the forward half of the vehicle (see Note 1). <p>Articulated vehicles Class 1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. The front section must contain a minimum of two service doors. The rear section must contain a least one service door. <p>Articulated vehicle other than Class 1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. There must be at least one service door in each section of the vehicle. <p>Class I, II, III or IIIS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Single deck vehicles, and the lower deck of a double deck vehicle, must have a minimum separation distance between two of the doors, such that the distance between transverse vertical planes through their centres of area is not less than 40 % of the overall length of the passenger compartment. |

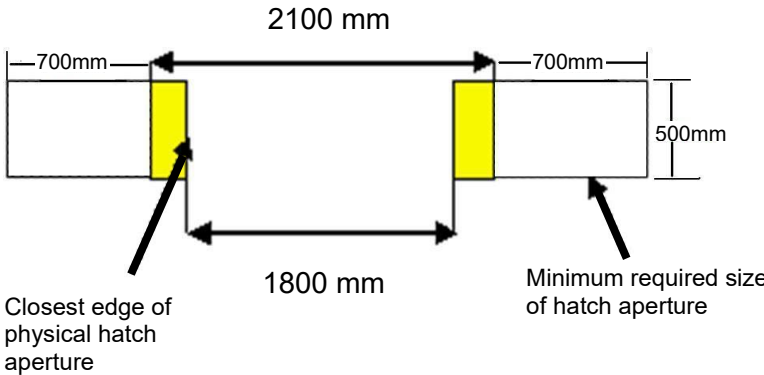
Number and Location of Exits 52H

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|----------------------|--------------------------|---------|----------------|-----------|-----------------|-------|-----------------|----------------------|--------------------------|---------|----------------|-----------|-----------------|-------|-----------------|
| <p>Note 2: If one of these two doors forms part of a double door this distance shall be measured between the two doors which are furthest apart.</p> <p>Note 3: For the purpose of this requirement, service doors equipped with a power operated control system shall not be deemed to be emergency doors unless they can be readily opened by hand once the emergency control has been activated.</p> <p>Note 4: Escape hatches can only count as one of the above mentioned number of emergency exits.</p> <p>Note 5 Each rigid section of an articulated vehicle shall be treated as a separate vehicle for the purpose of determining the minimum number and the position of exits. The connecting passage between them shall not be considered as an exit. The number of passengers shall be determined for each rigid section. The plane, which contains the horizontal axis of the hinge between conjoined rigid sections of the vehicle, and perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of a vehicle, when it moves straight, shall be considered as the border between sections.</p> <p>Note 6: Toilet compartments or galleys are not considered to be separate compartments for the purposes of defining the number of emergency exits.</p> <p>Note 7: A double service door shall count as two doors and a double or multiple window as two emergency windows.</p> <p>Note 8: If access to the service door is obstructed by a permitted folding crew seat, that door cannot count as one of the emergency exits.</p> | <p>7. Double deck vehicles may as an alternative to the above requirements, use 25% of the vehicles overall length as the minimum separation distance; this shall not apply if the two doors are on different sides of the vehicle (see Note 2).</p> <p>8. Articulated vehicle must have two doors of the different sections separated such that the distance between the doors is not less than 40 per cent of the overall length of the combined passenger compartment (all sections).</p> <p>Class I & A vehicles</p> <p>9. The vehicle must have the minimum number of service doors in relation to passengers identified in the table below:-</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Number of Passengers</th> <th>Number of doors required</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>9 to 45</td> <td>1 Service door</td> </tr> <tr> <td>46 to 100</td> <td>2 Service doors</td> </tr> <tr> <td>> 100</td> <td>4 Service doors</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Class II</p> <p>10. The vehicle must have the minimum number of service doors in relation to passengers identified in the table below:-</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Number of Passengers</th> <th>Number of doors required</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>9 to 70</td> <td>1 Service door</td> </tr> <tr> <td>71 to 100</td> <td>2 Service doors</td> </tr> <tr> <td>> 100</td> <td>3 Service doors</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Number of Passengers | Number of doors required | 9 to 45 | 1 Service door | 46 to 100 | 2 Service doors | > 100 | 4 Service doors | Number of Passengers | Number of doors required | 9 to 70 | 1 Service door | 71 to 100 | 2 Service doors | > 100 | 3 Service doors |
| Number of Passengers | Number of doors required | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 to 45 | 1 Service door | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 46 to 100 | 2 Service doors | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| > 100 | 4 Service doors | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Number of Passengers | Number of doors required | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 to 70 | 1 Service door | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 71 to 100 | 2 Service doors | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| > 100 | 3 Service doors | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Number and Location of Exits 52H

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|--------|---|---------|---|----------|---|----------|---|----------|---|----------|---|----------|---|-----------|---|------------|----|-------|----|-----------------------------|---|-------------------------|---|
| <p>Note 9: This does not preclude there being a door or other barrier between the driver's seat and the passenger compartment, provided that this barrier can be released quickly by the driver in an emergency. A driver's door in a compartment protected by such a barrier shall not be counted as an exit for passengers.</p> <p>Note 10: These will act as service and emergency doors for the driver and two seated passengers However the requirements of sections 52I Service doors, 52J Emergency doors and 52N steps do not apply to these doors, but they must comply with RS1 of the General Construction section.</p> <p>Note 11: The driver's door in this situation being used as an Emergency door would have to meet Section 52D RS 3.4 & 5. However, the door would not have to meet the requirements of Section 52J Emergency Doors.</p> <p>Note 12: To be accepted as permanently closed off there must be a partitioned off separate compartment, i.e. high luggage space, separating the passenger compartment from the rear face of the vehicle.</p> <p>Example: - A full fibre glass rear panel that does not contain a window will not be deemed to fit the as permanently closed off criteria.</p> | <p>Class III & B</p> <p>11. The vehicle must have at least one service door.</p> <p>All Classes</p> <p>12. The vehicle must have the minimum number of Emergency exits, these can be service doors, emergency doors, emergency windows, emergency hatches, or for the upper deck intercommunicating staircase. The numbers required are listed below: (see Notes 3 to 8 & 11).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Number of passengers either seated or standing and any crew, accommodated in any compartment or on any deck</th> <th>Total number of exits required in the compartment or deck</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1 to 8</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>9 to 16</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr><td>17 to 30</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr><td>31 to 45</td><td>5</td></tr> <tr><td>46 to 60</td><td>6</td></tr> <tr><td>61 to 75</td><td>7</td></tr> <tr><td>76 to 90</td><td>8</td></tr> <tr><td>91 to 110</td><td>9</td></tr> <tr><td>111 to 130</td><td>10</td></tr> <tr><td>> 130</td><td>11</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>(For open deck vehicles the requirement is met on that deck if the clear space is equal to the number of correct sized exits)</p> <p>Class II, III & B Single deck vehicles</p> <p>13. The vehicle must have the minimum number of escape hatches, these are:</p> <table> <tr> <td>Not exceeding 50 Passengers</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Exceeding 50 passengers</td> <td>2</td> </tr> </table> | Number of passengers either seated or standing and any crew, accommodated in any compartment or on any deck | Total number of exits required in the compartment or deck | 1 to 8 | 2 | 9 to 16 | 3 | 17 to 30 | 4 | 31 to 45 | 5 | 46 to 60 | 6 | 61 to 75 | 7 | 76 to 90 | 8 | 91 to 110 | 9 | 111 to 130 | 10 | > 130 | 11 | Not exceeding 50 Passengers | 1 | Exceeding 50 passengers | 2 |
| Number of passengers either seated or standing and any crew, accommodated in any compartment or on any deck | Total number of exits required in the compartment or deck | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 to 8 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 to 16 | 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 17 to 30 | 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 31 to 45 | 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 46 to 60 | 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 61 to 75 | 7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 76 to 90 | 8 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 91 to 110 | 9 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 111 to 130 | 10 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| > 130 | 11 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Not exceeding 50 Passengers | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exceeding 50 passengers | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Number and Location of Exits 52H

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | |
|--|--|---|---|---|---|
| <p>Note 13: Where two hatches are fitted which exceed the minimum dimensions the distance between them may be calculated by measuring 700mm from the furthest distance of each aperture and then between those two points (see illustration below).</p>  | <p>Class II, III & B Double deck vehicles</p> <p>14. The vehicle must have the minimum number of roof escape hatches, these are:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Not exceeding 50 Passengers on the upper deck</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Exceeding 50 Passengers on the upper deck</td> <td>2</td> </tr> </table> <p>All classes</p> <p>15. The driver's compartment must have direct access to the gangway of the vehicle or adequate alternative exits. (see Note 9) The minimum alternative exits requirements are:-</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The driver's compartment must have two exits, not in the same lateral wall. If one of the exits is a window, it must comply with the requirements for emergency window dimensions and operation (Laid out in section 52 (1) K of this manual) <p>All Classes that have one or two seats alongside the driver and does not provide access to the passenger compartment by means of a passageway.</p> <p>16. There must be a minimum of two doors, not in the same lateral wall, available to the driver and passengers in the adjacent seats, or there must be access from the main passenger compartment complying with the dimensional requirements for a gangway of the appropriate class of vehicle) (see Note 10).</p> <p>17. In the case of no adequate access to the passenger compartment, the driver's door shall be accepted as the emergency door for the occupants of those seats, provided that it is possible to move a test gauge from the occupants' seats to the exterior of the vehicle through the driver's door. (This can be assessed by the use of a test gauge of dimensions 600x400mm The direction of motion of the test gauge shall be in the direction in which a passenger evacuating the vehicle would be expected to move. The test gauge shall be kept perpendicular to that direction of motion) (see Note 11, & Figure 1).</p> | Not exceeding 50 Passengers on the upper deck | 1 | Exceeding 50 Passengers on the upper deck | 2 |
| Not exceeding 50 Passengers on the upper deck | 1 | | | | |
| Exceeding 50 Passengers on the upper deck | 2 | | | | |

Number and Location of Exits 52H

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|---|
| | <p>18. The exits provided for the driver's compartment shall not count as one of the doors required by standard (1) nor as one of the exits required by standard (12) - unless a driver's door complying with the requirements for an emergency door is provided, and the space reserved for the driver's seat must communicate with the main passengers' compartment through an appropriate passage; such requirement shall be deemed to be fulfilled if the relevant gangway gauge (see section 52M) can move unobstructed from the gangway, until the front end of the gauge reaches the vertical plane tangential to the foremost point of the driver's seat back (this seat being situated in its rearmost longitudinal position) and, from this plane, a test gauge of dimensions 600x400mm could be moved to the emergency door in the direction in which a passenger evacuating the vehicle would be expected to move (see figure 2) with seat and steering wheel adjustment in their mid-position."</p> <p>All classes where there are a maximum of 5 additional seats in a separate compartment containing the drivers accommodation.</p> <p>19. There must be at least one door giving access to the passenger compartment, complying with the dimensional requirements for an emergency door.</p> <p>Class I, II, & III, (Class A & B vehicles may optionally use Standards 20 to 22 in place of Standards 23 to 26)</p> <p>20. The exits must be placed in such a way that their number on each of the two sides of the vehicle is substantially the same. In the case of a double deck vehicle this applies to each deck.</p> <p>21. Where there is more than one exit on the same side of the vehicle, they must be suitably spaced out along the length of the vehicle.</p> |

Number and Location of Exits 52H

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>22. There must be at least one emergency exit situated either in the rear face or in the front face of the vehicle, respectively. For Class I vehicles and for vehicles with a rear part permanently closed off from the passenger compartment, (see Note 13), this requirement is fulfilled if an escape hatch / s is fitted in accordance with standards 13 & 14 of this section. In the case of a double deck vehicle this applies to the upper deck only.</p> <p>Class A or B vehicles not complying with 20 to 22 above</p> <p>23. The exits must be placed so there is at least one exit on either side of the vehicle.</p> <p>24. The forward and rearward parts of the passenger space must both contain an exit.</p> <p>25. There must be at least one exit in either the front or rear face or an escape hatch fitted. (For Class B vehicles see RS13.)</p> <p>26. The service door(s) must be situated on the side of the vehicle that is nearer to the side of the road corresponding to the direction of the traffic in the country in which the vehicle is to be registered, or in the rear face of the vehicle.</p> <p>All classes with escape hatches fitted except vehicles of Class A or B complying with standards 23 to 26 above.</p> <p>27. If there is only one hatch, it must be situated in the middle third of the passenger compartment; if there are two hatches, they must be separated by a distance of at least 2 metres measured between the nearest edges of the apertures in a line parallel to the longitudinal axis of the vehicle (see Note 13).</p> |

Number and Location of Exits 52H

Figure 1

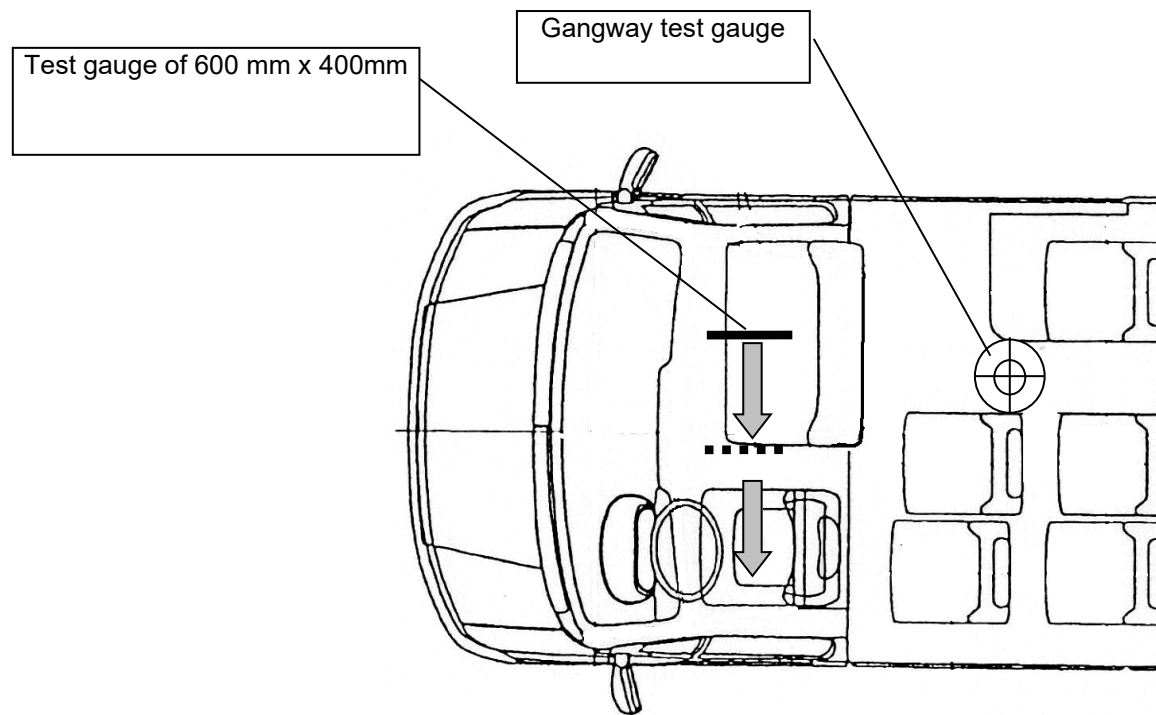
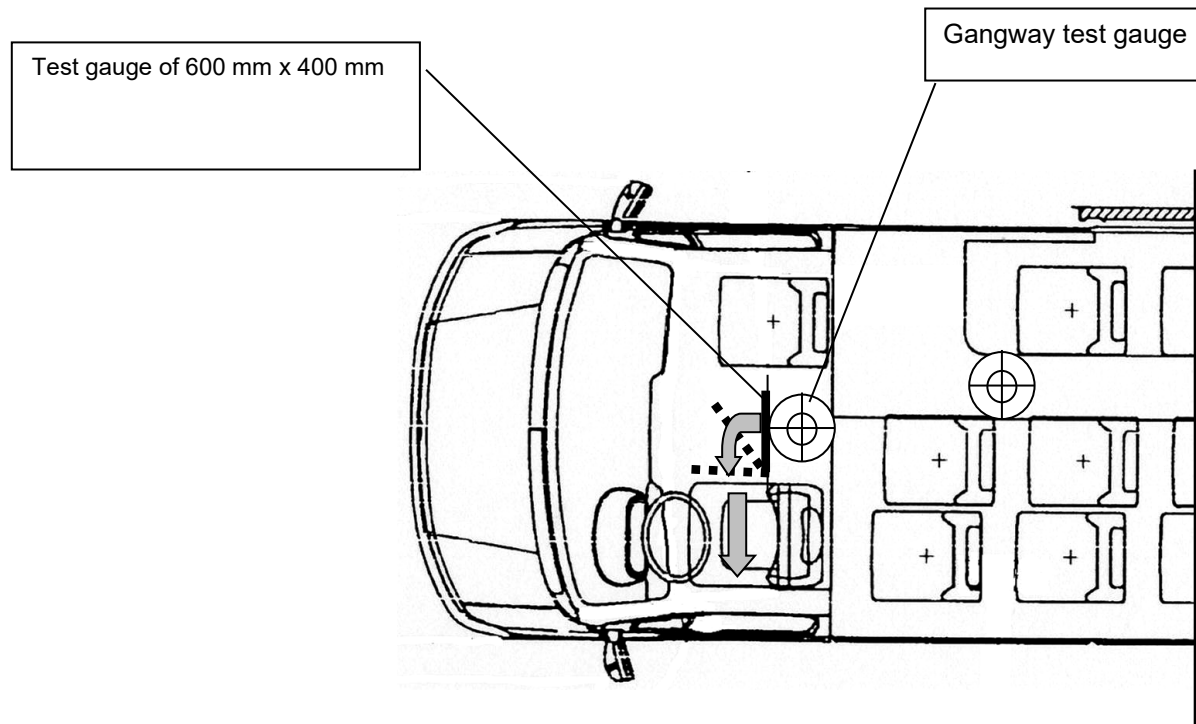


Figure 2



Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Add text to Note 10 "However the requirements of sections 52I Service doors, 52J Emergency doors and 52N steps do not apply to these doors, but they must comply with RS1 of the General Construction section" |
| 3 | 29/04/2010 | Reword Table Titles in RS 11, reword RS 19 and Bold Title above RS 21 |
| 4 | 29/10/2010 | Reword RS 20 |
| 5 | 03/05/2011 | Add new heading above RS 25 |
| 6 | 31/07/2011 | Link RS1 & 12 to note 11 |
| 7 | 30/11/2011 | Amend RS21, add new note 12 and link to RS17 |
| 8 | 30/04/2012 | Add the text 'one or two' to heading above RS16 |
| 9 | 11/02/2013 | Insert link to Note1 in RS2, amend title before RS19 and amend RS24 |
| 10 | 10/04/2018 | Reword header before RS3, insert new Note 13 and amend RS26 |
| 11 | 01/07/2018 | Amend References to Required standards |
| 12 | 01/09/2020 | New paragraph in Mol |
| 13 | 15/04/2024 | Improve format of diagram at Note 13; Amend headings above RS3 and RS20 |

Number and Location of Exits 52H

This page intentionally left blank

52I Service Doors

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---------|--------|---------|--------|-------------|-------|-------------|--------|--|-------|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure the minimum sizes of service doors and their operation and access, meet the required standards.</p> <p>This inspection covers the requirements of Automatically Operated Service doors.</p> <p>Note1: For vehicles of Class A or B, the lower panel may be displaced horizontally relative to the upper panel provided that it is in the same direction.</p> <p>Note2: The service door entry height is measured as the vertical distance of the horizontal projections of the mid-point of the door aperture and the top surface of the lowest step.</p> <p>Note 3: The width of any service door may be reduced by 100mm when the measurement is taken at the level of the hand holds, and by 250mm in cases where intruding wheel arches or the actuating mechanism for automatic or remote control doors or the rake of the windscreen so require.</p> | <p><u>Size of service doors</u></p> <p>Class I,II,III or optional for class A or B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The service door aperture must allow the free passage of the appropriate form defined in Figure 1 (see Note 1). <p>Class A or B as an alternative to RS1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The minimum entrance height of the service door must be at least:- (see Notes 2 & 14) <table> <tr> <td>Class A</td> <td>1650mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Class B</td> <td>1500mm</td> </tr> </table> Check the width of the service door is at least:- (see Notes 3 & 14) <table> <tr> <td>Single door</td> <td>650mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Double door</td> <td>1200mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>For class B vehicles at aperture heights between 1400mm & 1500mm</td> <td>750mm</td> </tr> </table> | Class A | 1650mm | Class B | 1500mm | Single door | 650mm | Double door | 1200mm | For class B vehicles at aperture heights between 1400mm & 1500mm | 750mm |
| Class A | 1650mm | | | | | | | | | | |
| Class B | 1500mm | | | | | | | | | | |
| Single door | 650mm | | | | | | | | | | |
| Double door | 1200mm | | | | | | | | | | |
| For class B vehicles at aperture heights between 1400mm & 1500mm | 750mm | | | | | | | | | | |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | |
|---|--|-------------|-------|-------------|--------|
| <p>Note 4: The dimensions may be reduced by a radius at the corners of the aperture not exceeding 150mm. The width may be reduced by 100mm when the measurement is taken at the level of the hand holds, and by 250mm in cases where intruding wheel arches or the actuating mechanism for automatic or remote control doors or the rake of the windscreen so require.</p> <p>Note 5: (This does not exclude the presence in the step well, when the door is closed, of the door-operating mechanism and other equipment attached to the inside of the door which does not form an extension of the floor on which passengers may stand. This mechanism and equipment should not be dangerous for the passengers).</p> <p>Note 6: In the case of a service door in the rear face of the vehicle not exceeding 22 passengers, this requirement is satisfied if the driver is able to detect the presence of a person 1.3 m tall standing 1 m behind the vehicle).</p> <p>Driving mirrors may be used to meet the requirements of this paragraph provided that the field of view required for driving is still met.</p> <p>In the case of doors situated behind the articulated section of an articulated vehicle, mirrors will not be deemed to be a sufficient optical device.</p> <p>Note 7: However, this requirement shall not apply if the service door is locked automatically when the vehicle is moving at a speed exceeding 5 km/h.</p> | <p>Class B vehicles with a technically permissible maximum mass not exceeding 3,5 tonnes and up to 12 passengers seats in which each seat has unobstructed access to at least two doors. Can as an alternative to RS 1 - 3 meet the requirements of this section.</p> <p>4. The aperture height must be a minimum of 1100mm, this may be reduced by a radius at the corners of the aperture not exceeding 150mm. (see Notes 4 & 14)</p> <p>5. The aperture width must be a minimum of :</p> <table> <tr> <td>Single door</td> <td>650mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Double door</td> <td>1200mm</td> </tr> </table> <p>(see Note 14)</p> <p><u>Operation of all service doors</u></p> <p>All Classes</p> <p>6. The service door must be easily opened from both inside and outside the vehicle when the vehicle is stationary.</p> <p>7. Service doors that can be locked from the outside must always be capable of being opened from inside.</p> <p>8. The position of the exterior service door opening control must meet the following positional requirements;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Height of control from the ground is between 1000mm and 1500mm. b. Control is not more than 500mm from nearest door edge. | Single door | 650mm | Double door | 1200mm |
| Single door | 650mm | | | | |
| Double door | 1200mm | | | | |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>Note 8: This does not preclude the ability to override that stop and open the door beyond that angle when it is safe to do so; for example, to enable reversing against a high platform for loading or to open the doors through 270 ° to allow a clear loading area behind the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 9: This requirement may be checked, by means of a test bar tapered at one end over a length of 300 mm from a thickness of 30 mm to a thickness of 5 mm. It shall not be treated with polish nor lubricated. If the door traps the bar it shall be capable of being easily removed.</p> <p>Note 10: Activation and deactivation may be either direct, by means of a switch, or indirect, for example by opening and closing the front service door.</p> <p>Note 11: The pressing of the push-buttons mentioned in Section A, and the use of the normal means of passenger communication with the driver, may send a signal which is stored and which, after the activation of the opening controls by the driver, affects the opening of the door.</p> <p>Note 12: The free passage clearance for this figure shall not include any space extending to 300 mm in front of any uncompressed seat cushion of a forward or rearward facing seat or 225 mm in the case of seats fitted at wheel arches, and to the height of the top of the seat cushion. In the case of a folding passenger seat, this space shall be determined with the seat in the position of use.</p> | <p>Class I, II & III</p> <p>9. Interior door opening controls (this does not include the emergency control for power operated doors) not located in the drivers area, must conform to the following positional requirements;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Height of control from the upper surface of the floor or step closest to the control is between 1000mm and 1500mm. b. Control is not more than 500mm from nearest door edge. <p>All Classes</p> <p>10. Every one-piece, manually-operated service door which is hinged or pivoted must be so hinged or pivoted that if the open door comes into contact with a stationary object while the vehicle is moving forwards it tends to close.</p> <p>11. If a manually-operated service door is fitted with a slam lock it must be of the two-stage type.</p> <p>12. On the inside of a service door/s there must be not any device intended to cover the inside steps when the door is closed (see Note 5).</p> <p>13. The driver must be able to detect from his seat, either by direct view, optical or other device, the presence of a passenger in the immediate interior and exterior vicinity of every side service door which is not an automatically operated service door (see Note 6).</p> <p>Class 1 Double deck</p> <p>14. The driver must be able to detect from his seat, either by direct view, optical or other device, the presence of a passenger, in the immediate vicinity of each intercommunication staircase on the upper deck.</p> |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>Note 13: However, a folding seat for use by the crew may obstruct the access passage to a service door when in the position of use provided that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. It is clearly indicated that the seat is for the use of crew only; b. When the seat is not in use it folds automatically as necessary to enable the requirements of 56 & 57 to be met. c. The door is not considered to be a mandatory exit for the purpose of minimum numbers of emergency exits. d. When the seat is in the position of use, and when it is in the folded position, no part of it shall be forward of a vertical plane passing through the centre of the seating surface of the driver's seat in its rearmost position and through the centre of the exterior rear-view mirror mounted on the opposite side of the vehicle. <p>Note 14: The use of a tape measure will be allowed where the service door aperture fails to comply with test gauge (Tg2).</p> | <p>All classes</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 15. Any service door which opens towards the interior of the vehicle and its mechanism must be constructed so that its movement is not likely to cause injury to passengers in normal conditions of use. (Where necessary, appropriate protection devices may be used). 16. Any service door that is adjacent to a door to a toilet or other internal compartment must be proofed against unintentional operation. (see Note 7) <p>Class A & B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 17. For any service door located in the rear of the vehicle, the leaves must be capable of being opened more than 85 ° and not more than 115 ° and, when open, shall be capable of being held automatically in that position (see Note 8). <p>All classes</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 18. The service door in any open position must not obstruct the use of, or required access to, any mandatory exit. <p><u>Additional technical requirements for power-operated service doors.</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 19. In the event of an emergency, every power-operated service door must be capable, when the vehicle is stationary or driving at a speed less than or equal to 5 km/h, of being opened from inside, and when not locked from outside by controls which operate whether or not the power supply is operating. 20. Operation of the emergency control/s must override all other door controls. |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>21. The interior emergency control must be placed on, or within 300 mm of, the door, at a height of not less than 1600 mm above the first internal step from the ground located at the relevant service door.(Except in the case of interior controls for a door designed only for wheelchair access, in this case the requirements in section 52Z, apply).</p> <p>22. All emergency controls must be easily seen and clearly identified, when approaching the door and when standing in front of the door and if additional to the normal opening controls, be clearly marked for emergency use.</p> <p>23. The emergency control must be capable of being operated by one person when standing immediately in front of the door.</p> <p>24. Operation of the emergency control must cause the door to open to a width that the gauge as defined in Figure 1. can pass through within 8 seconds after the operation of the control or enable the door to be easily opened by hand to a width that the gauge as defined in Figure 1 Can pass through within 8 seconds after the operation of the control.</p> <p>25. Any protection device for an emergency control must be capable of being easily moved or broken to allow easy access to the control.</p> <p>26. The operation of the emergency control, or the removal of a protective cover over the control, must be indicated to the driver both audibly and visually.</p> <p>27. The doors must be prevented from opening if the vehicle moves at a speed higher than 5 km/h.</p> <p>28. Any device located within the driver’s compartment that enables the driver from the driving seat to deactivate the outside emergency controls in order to lock the service doors from outside, must meet the following requirements;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The outside emergency controls must be reactivated automatically either by the starting of the engine or before the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h. |

Service Doors 52I

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>b. Subsequent, deactivation of the outside emergency controls must, not occur automatically, but require a further action by the driver.</p> <p>29. Every driver-operated service door must be capable of operation by the driver when in the driving seat using controls which, except in the case of a foot control, are clearly and distinctively marked.</p> <p>30. The driver’s door controls, must be such that the driver is able to reverse the movement of the door at any time during the closing or opening process.</p> <p>31. All power operated service doors (except front service doors complying with items 37 & 38) must activate a visual tell-tale, which is plainly visible to the driver when seated in the normal driving position in any ambient lighting condition, to warn that a door is not fully closed. This tell-tale must signal whenever the rigid structure of the door is between the fully open position and a point 30 mm from the fully closed position. One tell-tale may serve for one or more doors.</p> <p>32. The operation of the emergency control of all service doors not complying with items 33 to 36 below must be such that after operating the emergency control to open the door, and returning the control to its normal position, the door does not re-close until the driver operates a closing device.</p> <p>Front service doors may comply with either items 33 to 36 below or items 37 & 38. All other service doors must comply with items 33 to 36</p> <p>33. Doors when closing must not travel at a speed that would be likely to injure a passenger, or exert a clamping force greater than 150N, measured at the main closing edges of the door, at a point as close as practical to 150mm above the lower door edge, and at the centre of the door height. (The clamping force may exceed 150N for a short period (approx. 3 seconds) but must not exceed 300N).</p> <p>34. Door/s when their movement is blocked, between fully open and to within 30mm from fully closed, must stop and fully re open automatically.</p> |

Service Doors 52I

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|---|
| | <p>35. After the door has reopened (described in item 34) the door must not close until a closing control is operated. (Does not apply in the case of automatically operated service doors).</p> <p>36. When the door closes below 30mm from fully closed and down to 5mm from fully closed, it must meet one of the 3 criteria below:-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The door reopens automatically to its fullest extent when it meets the wrist or fingers, and, except in the case of an automatically operated service door, remains open until a closing control is operated, or b. The wrist or fingers can be readily extracted from the doors without risk of injury to the passenger. (see Note 9) or c. The door is maintained at a position allowing the free passage of a test bar having a section of height 60 mm, width 20 mm, with corners radiused to 5 mm. This position shall not be more than 30 mm distant from the fully closed position. <p>Alternative for all classes front service door only.</p> <p>37. The doors when closing must not travel at a speed or force that would be likely to injure a passenger.</p> <p>38. The front service doors must be fitted with soft edges; these shall not, however be so soft that if the doors are closed on a test bar having a section of height 60 mm, width 30 mm with corners radiused to 5 mm. the rigid structure of the doors will reach the fully closed position.</p> <p>All Classes</p> <p>39. All power-operated service doors, which are held closed only by continued application of the power supply, must be provided with a visual warning device to inform the driver of any failure in the power supply to the doors.</p> |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>40. All power operated service doors must have either a starting prevention device or an audible warning to the driver that is activated if the vehicle is driven away from rest when any power-operated service door is not fully closed.</p> <p>41. Any starting prevention device fitted must be effective only at speeds of less than 5 km/h and must be incapable of operation above that speed.</p> <p><u>Additional technical requirements for automatically operated service doors</u></p> <p>42. All door opening controls (except the internal emergency control), must only be capable of activated and deactivated by the driver whilst in his seat (see Note 10).</p> <p>43. Following activation of the opening control/s by the driver, the activation must be indicated inside and, where a door is to be opened from outside, also on the outside of the vehicle; the indicator (e.g. illuminated push-button, illuminated sign) shall be on or adjacent to the door to which it relates.</p> <p>44. In the case of direct actuation by means of a switch, the functional state of the system must be clearly indicated to the driver, by, for example, the position of the switch or an indicator lamp or an illuminated switch. The switch must be specially marked and arranged in such a way that it cannot be confused with other controls.</p> <p>45. After activation of the opening controls by the driver, it must be possible for passengers to open the door as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. From inside, for example by pressing a push-button or passing a light barrier, and b. From outside, (except in the case of a door intended only as an exit and marked as such), by, for example, pressing an illuminated push-button, a push-button beneath an illuminated sign, or a similar device marked with a suitable instruction (see Note 11). |

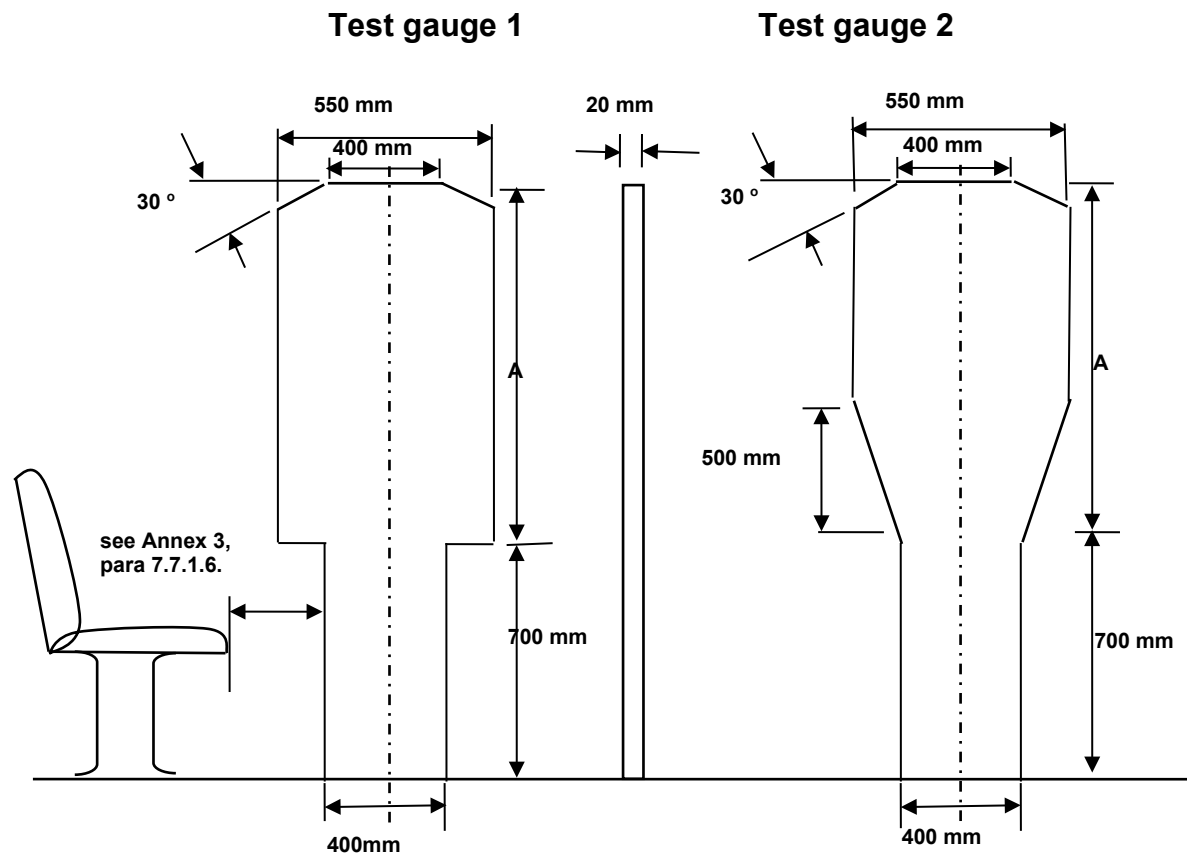
| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|---|
| | <p>46. When an automatically operated service door has opened it must close again automatically after a time interval has elapsed.</p> <p>47. If a passenger enters or leaves the vehicle during the time interval, a safety device (e.g. a footboard contact, light barrier, one-way gate) must ensure that the time until the door closes is sufficiently extended.</p> <p>48. If a passenger enters or leaves the vehicle while the door is closing, the closing process must be interrupted automatically, and the door/s must return to the open position. The reversal may be actuated by one of the safety devices referred to in item 47 or by any other device.</p> <p>49. Any door that has closed automatically must be capable of being opened again by a passenger; using the controls called for in item 45, (this shall not apply if the driver has deactivated the opening controls).</p> <p>50. After deactivation of the opening controls of the automatically operated service doors by the driver, open doors must close in accordance with items 47 & 48.</p> <p>51. The driver must be able to inhibit the automatic closing process by actuation of a special control.</p> <p>52. A passenger must be able to inhibit the automatic closing process directly by pressing a special push-button.</p> <p>53. The inhibition of the automatic closing process must be indicated to the driver, e.g. by a visual tell-tale.</p> <p>54. The driver must be able to re-establish the automatic closing process.</p> <p>55. Any open door that closes when the driver re-establishes the automatic closing process, must comply with items 47 & 48.</p> |

Service Doors 52I

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|---|
| | <p><u>Access passage to service doors</u></p> <p>Class I, II, III optional for class A, or B</p> <p>56. It must be possible to move one of the panels described in figure 1 below, resting on the floor/step of the vehicle inwards into the vehicle a distance of 300mm from the side wall in which the door is mounted The dual panel shall be maintained parallel with the door aperture as it is moved from the starting position, then be kept at right angles to the probable direction of motion of a person using the entrance.</p> <p>57. For all vehicles where there is more than one step at the entrance to the vehicle between the panel described in item 56 at a position 300mm into the Vehicle and the gangway figure described in section 52M placed so that its centre line has reached the vertical plane which contains the top edge of the uppermost step. It must be possible for a 20 mm thick panel having the appropriate dimensions for a gangway for the specific class of vehicle (see section 52M) to be moved, from the position of the gangway figure, until its external side is in contact with the dual panel interior side, touching the plane or planes defined by the step upper edges, in the probable direction of motion of a person using the entrance (see Figure 2 & Notes 12 & 13).</p> <p>Alternative for class A or B, not complying with standards 56 & 57 (For Class B vehicles with a technically permissible maximum mass not exceeding 3,5 tonnes and up to 12 passengers seats see, option in standard 59)</p> <p>58. (See Note 14) As an alternative to items 56 & 57 vehicles having a capacity not exceeding 22 passengers a doorway and the route by which passengers gain access to it shall be considered unobstructed if they have:</p> <p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Measured parallel with the longitudinal axis of the vehicle, there is a clearance of not less than 220 mm at any point and 550 mm at any point being more than 500 mm above the floor or steps (see Figure 3). </p> |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>b. Measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the vehicle, there is a clearance of not less than 300 mm at any point and 550 mm at any point being more than 1200 mm above the floor or steps or less than 300 mm below the ceiling (see Figure 4).</p> <p>Class B with a technically permitted maximum mass not exceeding 3.5 tonnes and up to 12 passenger seats</p> <p>59. Each seat must have unobstructed access to at least two doors.</p> <p>All Classes</p> <p>60. The maximum slope of the floor in the access passage must not exceed 5 % when measured with the vehicle at its mass in running order standing on a horizontal surface. Any kneeling device shall not be engaged.</p> <p>61. The surface of access passages must be slip resistant.</p> |

Figure 1



| Vehicle class | Height of the upper panel (mm) (Dimension "A" figure 1) | |
|---------------|--|--------------|
| | Test gauge 1 | Test gauge 2 |
| Class A | 950 ^{*/} | 950 |
| Class B | 700 ^{*/} | 950 |
| Class I | 1,100 | 1,100 |
| Class II | 950 | 1,100 |
| Class III | 850 | 1,100 |

^{*/} For vehicles of Class A or B, the lower panel may be displaced horizontally relative to the upper panel provided that it is in the same direction."

Figure 2
ACCESS TO SERVICE DOORS

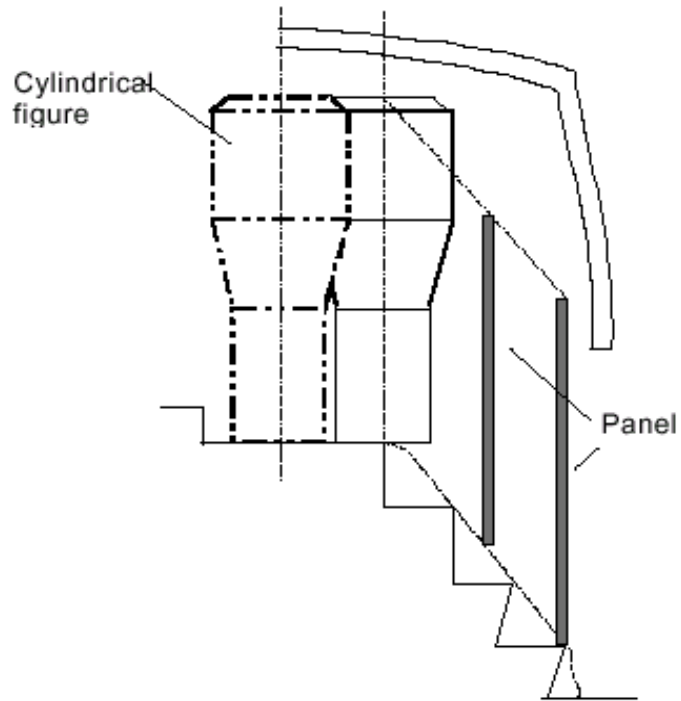


Figure 3
DETERMINATION OF UNOBSTRUCTED ACCESS TO DOOR

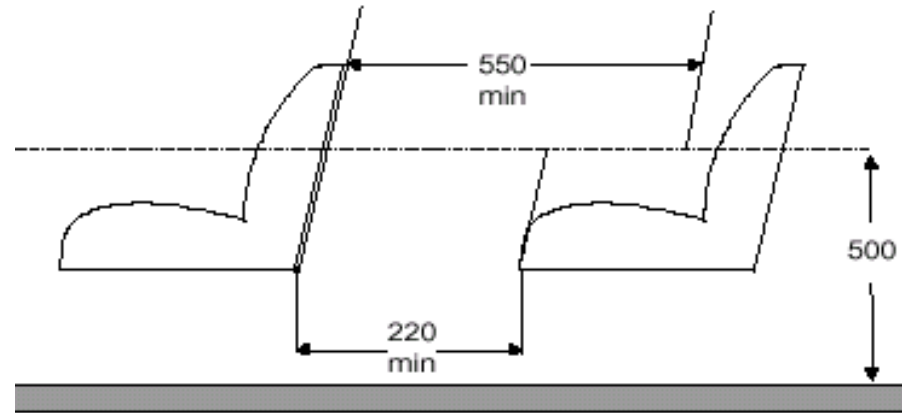
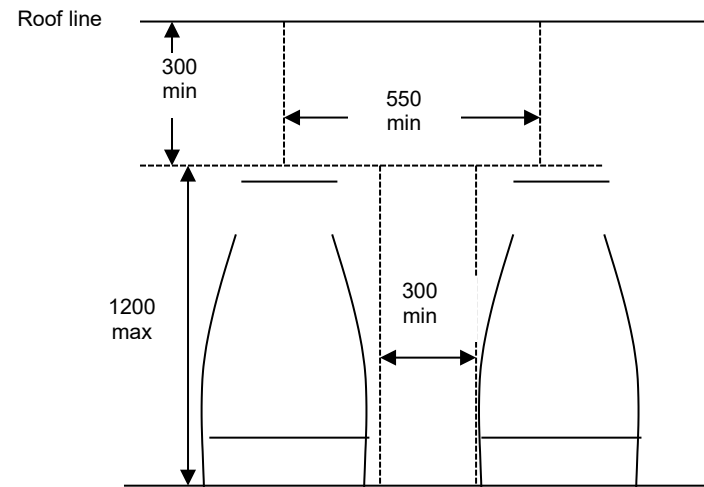


Figure 4
DETERMINATION OF UNOBSTRUCTED ACCESS TO DOOR



Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Add the text "as close as practical" to RS 34 |
| 3 | 29/04/2010 | Add the text "from the ground located at the relevant service door" to RS 22 |
| 4 | 03/05/2011 | Add new figure 1 and attached table |
| 5 | 31/07/2011 | Remove heading from above RS 57 and insert above RS 59 |
| 6 | 30/11/2011 | Add the heading 'All Classes' above RS 39 |
| 7 | 30/04/2012 | Replace alternative panel sizes with original panel sizes in Figure 1 table |
| 8 | 11/02/2013 | Replace Figure 1, add new Note 14 and link to RS 58 |
| 9 | 15/04/2024 | Correction of item number reference at RS 32 |
| | | |

52J Emergency Doors

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure the minimum sizes of emergency doors there operation and access, meet the required standards.</p> <p>Note1: The evidence would either be an approval or test carried out to the requirements of Regulation 33. and in addition, in the test report must be a statement the door could still be opened. (This is important, as the basic test to Reg 33 would not cover opening of the door).</p> <p>Note 2: Where the Emergency Door also acts as the access for a wheelchair user, then the door control height requirements are those contained in section 52Z RS 34.</p> <p>Note 3: The diameter of the upper cylinder may be reduced at the top to 400 mm when a chamfer not exceeding 30 ° from the horizontal is included.</p> <p>Note 4:-The base of the first cylinder shall be within the projection of the second cylinder (see Figure 1).</p> <p>Note 5: Where folding seats are installed alongside the passage in item 14 or 15, the free space for the cylinder shall be required to be determined when the seat/s are in the position for use.</p> | <p><u>Size of Emergency Doors</u></p> <p>Class I, II,& III (optional for class A or B)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The minimum height of the emergency door aperture must be 1250mm. and the minimum width of the emergency door aperture must be 550mm <p>Alternative for Class A & B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. The minimum height of the emergency door aperture must be 1250mm. The upper corners may be reduced with round-offs, having a radius of not more than 150mm. The minimum width of an emergency door aperture must be 550mm. The minimum width may be reduced to 300mm in cases where intruding wheel arches so require, providing that the width of 550mm is achieved at the minimum height of 400mm above the lowest part of the door aperture. <p>Alternative for Class B vehicles with a technically permissible maximum mass not exceeding 3.5 tonnes and up to 12 passengers seats in which each seat has unobstructed access to at least two doors.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. The minimum height of the emergency door aperture must be 1100mm. The upper corners may be reduced with round-offs, having a radius of not more than 150mm. The minimum width of an emergency door aperture must be 550mm. The minimum width may be reduced to 300mm in cases where intruding wheel arches so require, providing that the width of 550mm is respected at the minimum height of 400mm above the lowest part of the door aperture. |

Emergency Doors 52J

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p><u>Technical requirements for Emergency doors</u></p> <p>All Classes</p> <p>4. All Emergency doors must be capable of being easily opened from inside and from outside when the vehicle is stationary. However, the door may be able to be locked from the outside, provided that the door can always be opened from the inside by the use of the normal opening mechanism."</p> <p>All Classes with power operated Emergency doors</p> <p>5. All power operated emergency doors must meet the following criteria:-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The emergency control must override all other door controls. b. The interior emergency control must be placed on, or within 300 mm of, the door. c. The interior emergency control must be placed at a height of not less than 1600 mm above the first step. d. All emergency controls must be easily seen and clearly identified, when approaching the door and when standing in front of the door and if additional to the normal opening controls, be clearly marked for emergency use. e. The emergency control must be capable of operation by one person when standing immediately in front of the door. f. The operation of the emergency control must cause the door to open to a width that the gauge as defined in 14, or 15 below, can pass through within a maximum of 8 seconds after the operation of the control, or enable the door to be easily opened by hand to a width that the gauge can pass through within a maximum of 8 seconds after the operation of the control. |

Emergency Doors 52J

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>g. Any protection device for an emergency control must be easily moved or broken to allow easy access to the control.</p> <p>h. The operation of the emergency control, or the removal of a protective cover over the control, must be indicated to the driver both audibly and visually.</p> <p>i. The operation of the emergency control must be such that after operating the emergency control to open the door, and returning the control to its normal position, the door does not re-close until the driver operates a closing device.</p> <p>All classes</p> <p>6. Sliding emergency doors must only be fitted to a class A or B vehicle.</p> <p>Class A & B</p> <p>7. Where sliding emergency doors are fitted one of the following criteria must be met:-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. All passengers must have access to at least two doors, being either, service doors or emergency doors, and one of these doors must not be a sliding door. or b. Satisfactory documentary evidence that the door is capable of being opened without the use of tools after a frontal barrier collision test in accordance with Regulation 33 is required (see Note 1) <p>All Classes</p> <p>8. The exterior emergency door opening control (lower deck only of a double deck vehicle) must be positioned between 1000mm and 1500mm from the ground, and the control must not be more than 500mm from nearest door edge (see Note 2).</p> |

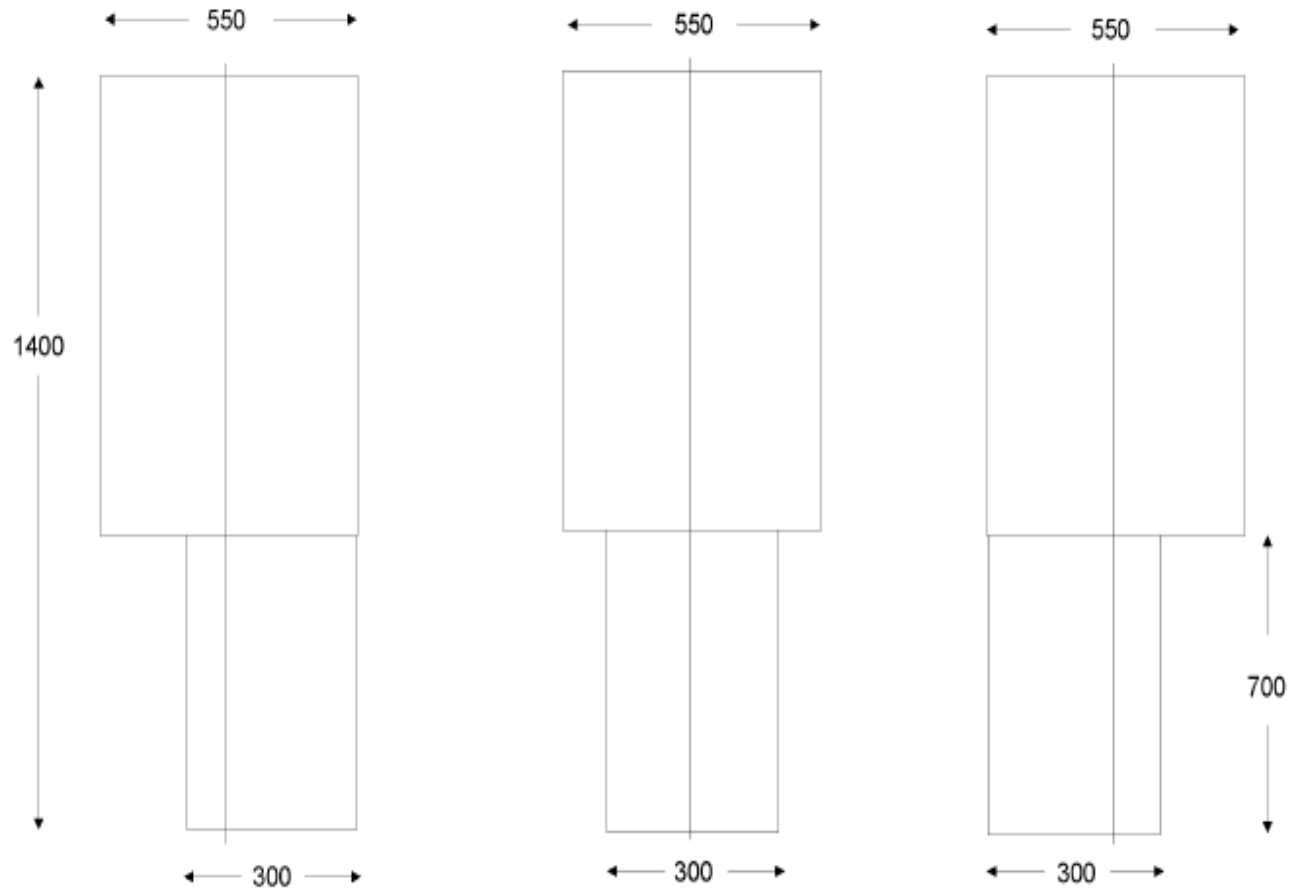
Emergency Doors 52J

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>Class I, II, & III</p> <p>9. Any interior door opening controls not located in the drivers area, must be positioned between 1000mm and 1500mm from the upper surface of the floor or step closest to the control, and the control must not be more than 500mm from nearest door edge. This does not include the emergency control for power operated doors.</p> <p>All classes</p> <p>10. All hinged emergency doors fitted to the side of the vehicle must be hinged at their forward edge and open outwards.</p> <p>11. Any hinged emergency door must either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • allow the door to open to an angle of at least 100° (where a check strap, chain or other restraining device is fitted) <p>or</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • be able to be held open in a position sufficient to give free passage to the emergency door access gauge <p>12. All Emergency doors must be proofed against unintentional operation. (able to be opened without a deliberate intentional action) However, this requirement shall not apply if the emergency door is locked automatically when the vehicle is moving at a speed exceeding 5 km/h.</p> <p>13. All emergency doors must be provided with an audible device to warn the driver when they are not securely closed. The warning device must be operated by movement of the door catch or handle and not by movement of the door itself.</p> |

Emergency Doors 52J

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|---|
| | <p><u>Access to Emergency Doors</u></p> <p>The requirements for vehicles using the driver’s door as an Emergency exit are contained in section 52H required standard 16, 17and 18.</p> <p>Class B vehicles with a technically permissible maximum mass not exceeding 3,5 tonnes and up to 12 passengers seats.</p> <p>14. Each seat must have unobstructed access to at least two doors.</p> <p>For all other vehicles</p> <p>15. The free space between the gangway and the emergency door aperture must permit the free passage of a vertical cylinder 300 mm in diameter and 700 mm high from the floor and supporting a second vertical cylinder 550 mm in diameter, the aggregate height of the assembly being 1400 mm (see Notes 3, 4 & 5, and Fig 1).</p> <p>16. As an alternative to item 15, the appropriate gangway figure for the class of vehicle, as described in section 52M, may be used to assess the access.</p> |

Figure 1



Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 31/07/2011 | Reword title above RS14, add new standard (14) to list and renumber remaining |
| 3 | 30/11/2011 | Add new note 2 and link to RS8, renumber other notes |
| 4 | 11/02/2013 | Amend RS11 |
| 5 | 15/04/2024 | Clarification of RS 5 Item c |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

52K Emergency Windows

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>Note 1: As an alternative, for an Emergency window situated in the rear face of the vehicle, it must be possible to inscribe in the emergency window aperture a rectangle 350mm high and 1550mm wide. The corners of the rectangle may radiused to a curvature not exceeding 250mm.</p> <p>Note 2: The height of the floor is taken to be the general level of the floor excluding any local variations such as the presence of a wheel arch or transmission housing.</p> <p>Note 3: This dimension can be reduced to 500mm provided that the window aperture is equipped with a guard up to a height of 650mm to prevent the possibility of passengers falling out of the vehicle. Where the window aperture is equipped with a guard, the size of the window above the guard shall not be less than the minimum size prescribed for an emergency window.</p> <p>Note 4: To be tested by a test gauge of :-</p> <p>A thin plate having a size of 600 X 400mm with its corners radiused by 200mm. However, in the case of an emergency window in the rear face of the vehicle, the test gauge may alternatively have a size of 1400mm X 350mm with corners radiused by 175mm.</p> <p>The direction of motion of the test gauge must be the direction in which a passenger evacuating the vehicle would be expected to move. The test gauge must be kept perpendicular to that direction of motion.</p> | <p>All Emergency Windows</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. An emergency window must have a minimum area of 400,000 mm² and it must be possible to inscribe within this area a rectangle of 500mm X 700mm (see Note 1). <p>For Break Glass type Exits</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. The emergency window must be made of readily breakable safety glass. (Laminated glass or plastic are not acceptable materials for break glass windows.) 3. A suitable 'break glass' device must be provided internally adjacent to each window or, if appropriate, securely mounted on each window and be readily available to ensure that the window can be broken. The "break glass" device for emergency windows in the rear face of the vehicle must be positioned centrally above, below, or on the emergency window or, alternatively, a device must be positioned adjacent to each end of the window or, securely mounted on the window either centrally or one at each end. 4. The height of the lower edge of an emergency window fitted in the side of the vehicle from the general level of the floor immediately below must not be more than 1200mm (see Note 2). 5. The height of the lower edge must not be less than 500mm from the general level of the floor immediately below (see Note 2). |

Emergency Windows 52K

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|---|
| | <p>For Hinged Type Exits</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6. All hinged emergency windows must open outwards. 7. Hinged windows must be able to be easily and instantaneously operated from inside and outside the vehicle by a suitable device. 8. Any hinged window which is capable of being locked from the outside must be so constructed as to be capable of being opened from the inside at all times. 9. Any emergency window that is hinged horizontally at the top edge must be fitted with a device to hold it fully open. 10. The height of the lower edge of an emergency window fitted in the side of the vehicle from the general level of the floor immediately below it is not more than 1200mm (see Note 2). 11. The height of the lower edge of a hinged window must not be less than 650mm from the general level of the floor immediately below it. (see Notes 2 & 3). 12. Every hinged emergency window which is not clearly visible from the driver's seat must be fitted with an audible warning device to warn the driver when it is not completely closed, which operates on the hinged window lock and not on the movement of the hinged window itself. 13. An emergency window must be capable of operating so as not to obstruct the clear passage from inside or outside of the vehicle. |

Emergency Windows 52K

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>For Ejectable Type Windows</p> <p>14. All ejectable emergency windows must open outwards.</p> <p>15. Ejectable emergency windows must not become totally detached from the vehicle when operated.</p> <p>16. All ejectable windows must not be able to be inadvertently ejected.</p> <p>17. All ejectable windows must be capable of easy and instantaneous operation from inside and outside the vehicle by a suitable device.</p> <p>18. Any ejectable emergency window which is capable of being locked from the outside must be so constructed as to be capable of being opened from the inside at all times.</p> <p>19. The height of the lower edge of an ejectable emergency window fitted in the side of the vehicle from the general level of the floor immediately below must not be more than 1200mm (see Note 2).</p> <p><u>Access to all types of Emergency Window</u></p> <p>20. The appropriate test gauge must be able to be moved from the gangway to the exterior of the vehicle through every emergency window (see Note 4).</p> |

Emergency Windows 52K

Record of Revision

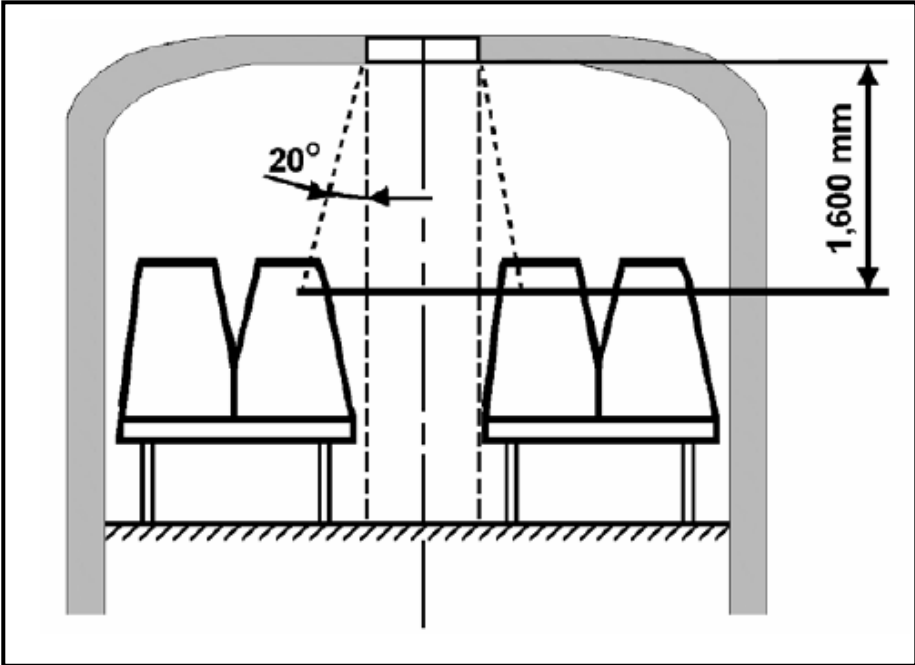
| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 03/05/2011 | Remove the brackets in Note 2 |
| 3 | 11/02/2013 | Amend RS3 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52L Emergency Hatches

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure the minimum sizes of emergency hatches, their operation and access meet the required standards.</p> <p>Escape hatches may be in the roof and be eject-able, hinged or made of readily breakable safety glass. Alternatively, they may be in the floor of the vehicle and be either hinged or eject-able.</p> <p>Note 1: This requirement shall not apply if the floor hatch is locked automatically when the vehicle is moving at a speed exceeding 5 km/h.</p> <p>Note 2: However, this requirement shall not be construed as precluding the possibility of locking the escape hatch for the purpose of securing the vehicle when unattended, provided that the escape hatch can always be opened or removed from the inside by the use of the normal opening or removal mechanism.</p> <p>Note 3: Supports may be foldable or movable provided that they can be locked in their position of use. Removable seats, wheelchairs and any other removable objects are not considered as an equivalent support.</p> <p>Note 4: When the structural thickness of the roof is more than 150 mm, the smaller section of the pyramid shall contact the aperture area of the escape hatch at the level of the outside surface of the roof.</p> | <p><u>Size of Escape hatches</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All escape hatches must have a minimum area of 400,000 mm², and within this area, it must be possible to inscribe a rectangle of 500mm x 700mm. <p><u>Technical requirements for escape hatches</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. All escape hatches must operate so as not to obstruct the clear passage from inside or outside the vehicle. 3. All floor Escape hatches must be fitted with an audible warning device to warn the driver when it is not securely closed. The floor escape hatch lock, and not the movement of the hatch itself, shall actuate this device. 4. All floor escape hatches must be proofed against unintentional operation (able to be opened without a deliberate intentional action) (see Note 1). 5. All ejectable floor escape hatches must eject into the passenger compartment. 6. All hinged floor escape hatches must hinge into the passenger compartment. 7. Ejectable escape hatches must not become totally detached from the vehicle when operated. |

Emergency Hatches 52L

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>Figure 1</p>  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. Ejectable escape hatches must be proofed against inadvertent operation (able to be opened without a deliberate intentional action). 9. Hinged escape hatches must be hinged along the edge towards the front or rear of the vehicle and must hinge through an angle of at least 100 °. 10. All escape hatches (other than break glass types) must be capable of being easily opened or removed from the inside and from the outside (see Note 2). 11. Break glass types of escape hatch must have a device provided adjacent to the hatch, readily available to persons inside the vehicle, to ensure that the hatch can be broken. 12. Break glass types of escape hatch must be made of readily breakable safety glass. <p><u>Access to escape Hatches</u></p> <p>Escape hatches in the roof</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 13. On vehicles other than Class 1 and A, at least one escape hatch must be located such that a four-sided truncated pyramid having a side angle of 20 ° and a height of 1600 mm touches part of a seat or equivalent support. The axis of the pyramid shall be vertical, and its smaller section shall contact the aperture area of the escape hatch. (See Figure 1 & Notes 3 & 4) |

Emergency Hatches 52L

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>Escape hatches in the floor</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 14. All floor escape hatches must have direct and free access to the exterior of the vehicle. 15. All floor escape hatches must have a clear space above the hatch equivalent to the height of the gangway for the appropriate class of vehicle. (See section 52M.) 16. There must not be any heat source or moving components within 500 mm from any part of the hatch aperture. 17. It must be possible to move a test gauge in the form of a thin plate having dimensions 600 mm × 400 mm with corners radiused by 200 mm in a horizontal position from a height above the floor of the vehicle of 1 m, to the ground. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 03/05/2011 | TSE M2M3 52L 001 incorporated into manual |
| 3 | 11/02/2013 | Amend Note 3. |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52M Gangways and Staircase

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>The definition of gangway is contained in the Definitions section, and the definition of forward limitations of gangways, where there is no exit forward of a seat or row of seats is shown in figures 5, 6, 7 below. These definitions will be required to be used in conjunction with this section.</p> <p>Note 1: <u>This dimension is intended to ensure all occupants have sufficient space to exit the vehicle safely in vehicles where it is not necessary to meet the more stringent requirements for gangways.</u></p> <p>Note 2: The gauging device may come into contact with strap hangers, if fitted, or other flexible objects such as seat belt components, and move them away.</p> <p>Note 3: In measuring the gangway width, no account shall be taken of whether or not the available space defined in (4) of section 52P protrudes into the gangway.</p> <p>Note 4: Dimension in brackets (or first dimension in brackets containing 2 dimensions) applies to any part of the gangway to the rear of a transverse vertical plane situated 1500 mm forward to the centre of the rear axle (foremost rear axle in the case of vehicles with more than one rear axle).</p> | <p>Class B vehicles with a technically permissible maximum mass not exceeding 3.5 tonnes and up to 12 passenger seats</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Each seat must have unobstructed access to at least two doors. <p>Class A or B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. As an alternative to the requirements set out in items 3 or 4 below, a vehicle of class A or B may meet the following requirements:- <p>Where all passengers have access from their seats to the service door, and the whole of the access meets the minimum requirements in a. and b. below, a gangway is not required.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Measured parallel with the longitudinal axis of the vehicle, there must be a clearance of not less than 220 mm (see Note 1) at any point and 550 mm at any point being more than 500 mm above the floor or steps (see Figure 3). b. Measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the vehicle, there must be a clearance of not less than 300 mm at any point and 550 mm at any point being more than 1200 mm above the floor or steps or less than 300 mm below the ceiling (see Figure 4). |

Gangways and Staircase 52M

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|---------|---------|--------------------------------|---------|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-----|--------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|------|
| <p>Note 5: ‘2nd dimension in brackets’ applies in the case of a service door which is situated forward the front axle in any part of the gangway situated between two transverse vertical planes situated 800 mm forwards and behind the centre line of the front axle.</p> <p>Note 6: In the case of a vehicle without a roof, the exits on the deck without a roof, must be such as to fulfil those prescriptions that are not incompatible with the absence of the roof.</p> <p>Note 7: During the examiner’s initial assessment, use of the tape measure is permitted to verify there is sufficient space to allow the specified test form to clearly move freely along the gangway. If doubt exists, the appropriate panel or form must be used.</p> <p>Note 8; Where the staircase is not directly forward of the gangway (side facing), if seat belts have been fitted by the manufacturer then for vehicles of Class III, Class B and Class II, then the requirements for RS 17 are deemed to be met.</p> | <p>All other Single deck Vehicles and optional for Class A or B double deck vehicles</p> <p>3. The appropriate form described in Figure 1 and the table below, must be able to move freely down the gangway (see Notes 2, 3, 4, 5 & 7 and Figure 1).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Class I</th> <th>Class II</th> <th>Class III</th> <th>Class A</th> <th>Class B</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Diameter of lower cylinder ‘A’</td> <td>450(**)</td> <td>350</td> <td>300</td> <td>350</td> <td>300</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Height of lower cylinder</td> <td>900</td> <td>900</td> <td>900</td> <td>900</td> <td>900</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Diameter of upper cylinder ‘C’</td> <td>550</td> <td>550</td> <td>450</td> <td>550</td> <td>450</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Height of upper cylinder ‘B’</td> <td>500(*)</td> <td>500(*)</td> <td>500(*)</td> <td>500(*)</td> <td>300</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Overall height ‘H’</td> <td>1900(*)</td> <td>1900(*)</td> <td>1900(*)</td> <td>1900(*)</td> <td>1500</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>(*) The height of the upper cylinder and herewith the overall height may be reduced by 100mm in any part of the gangway to the rear of : A transverse vertical plane situated 1.5m forward of the centre line of the rear axle (foremost rear axle in the case of vehicles with more than one rear axle) and A transverse vertical plane situated at the rear edge of the service door or of the rearmost service door if there are more than one service door.</p> <p>(**) On vehicles of Class I, the diameter of the lower cylinder may be reduced from 450 mm to 400 mm in any part of the gangway to the rear of the most forward of the following two planes: A transverse vertical plane situated 1.5 m forward of the centre line of the rear axle (foremost rear axle in the case of vehicles with more than one rear axle); and A transverse vertical plane situated at the rear edge of the rearmost service door in between the axles (for the purpose of the above, each rigid section of an articulated vehicle shall be considered separately).</p> | | Class I | Class II | Class III | Class A | Class B | Diameter of lower cylinder ‘A’ | 450(**) | 350 | 300 | 350 | 300 | Height of lower cylinder | 900 | 900 | 900 | 900 | 900 | Diameter of upper cylinder ‘C’ | 550 | 550 | 450 | 550 | 450 | Height of upper cylinder ‘B’ | 500(*) | 500(*) | 500(*) | 500(*) | 300 | Overall height ‘H’ | 1900(*) | 1900(*) | 1900(*) | 1900(*) | 1500 |
| | Class I | Class II | Class III | Class A | Class B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Diameter of lower cylinder ‘A’ | 450(**) | 350 | 300 | 350 | 300 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Height of lower cylinder | 900 | 900 | 900 | 900 | 900 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Diameter of upper cylinder ‘C’ | 550 | 550 | 450 | 550 | 450 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Height of upper cylinder ‘B’ | 500(*) | 500(*) | 500(*) | 500(*) | 300 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Overall height ‘H’ | 1900(*) | 1900(*) | 1900(*) | 1900(*) | 1500 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Gangways and Staircase 52M

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | |
|----------------------|--|--------------|---------------------|----------|---------------------|-----------|---------------------|
| | All other Double Deck | | | | | | |
| | 4. The appropriate form described in Figure 2 and the table below, must be able to move freely down the gangway (see Notes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 & 7 and Figure 2). | | | | | | |
| | | Class I | | Class II | | Class III | |
| | Upper /lower deck | UD | LD | UD | LD | UD | LD |
| | Diameter of lower cylinder | 450 (400) | 450 (400) | 350 | 350 | 300 | 300 |
| | Height of lower cylinder | 900 | 1020 (900/990) | 900 | 1020 (900/990) | 900 | 1020 (900/990) |
| | Diameter of upper cylinder | 550 | 550 | 550 | 550 | 450 | 450 |
| | Height of upper cylinder | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 |
| | Overall height | 1680 | 1800 (1680/1770) | 1680 | 1800 (1680/1770) | 1680 | 1800 (1680/1770) |

Gangways and Staircase 52M

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>All classes where there is no exit forward of a seat or row of seats:</p> <p>5. Where there is no exit forward of a seat or row of seats the following criteria will apply:-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the case of forward-facing seats, the front edge of the cylindrical gauge defined in 1. above must reach at least until the transverse vertical plane tangential to the foremost point of the foremost front row seat back and be retained in that position. From this plane, it must be possible to move the panel shown in figure 5, in such a way that starting from the contact position with the cylindrical gauge, the panel side facing the exterior of the vehicle is displaced forwards a distance of 660 mm. b. In the case of sideways facing seats, the forward part of the cylindrical gauge, defined in 1. above, must reach at least the transversal plane which coincides with a vertical plane passing through the centre of the forward seat (see Figure 6). c. In the case of rearward facing seats, the forward part of the cylindrical gauge, defined in 1. above must reach at least the transverse vertical plane tangential to the face of the seat cushions of the forward row or seat (see Figure 7). <p>All classes</p> <p>6. Laterally movable seats must only be fitted on vehicles of Class III.</p> <p>Class III</p> <p>7. Where laterally movable seats are fitted on one side or on both sides of the gangway, it must be possible with the seats extended laterally, to have free access with a reduced width of the gangway to a figure corresponding to a lower cylinder diameter of 220 mm, on condition that the operation of a control on each seat, readily accessible to a person standing in the gangway, shall be sufficient to cause the seat to return easily and, if possible, automatically, even when it is loaded, to the position corresponding to a minimum width of 300 mm.</p> |

Gangways and Staircase 52M

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>Articulated vehicles</p> <p>8. The form described in 1) single deck or 2) double deck, above must be capable of passing unobstructed through the articulated section. No part of the soft covering of that section, including parts of bellows, is allowed to project into the gangway.</p> <p>All classes</p> <p>9. Steps may be fitted in a gangway. The width of such steps must not be less than the width of the gangway at the top of the step/s.</p> <p>10. Folding seats allowing passengers to sit in the gangway must not be fitted.</p> <p>11. The surface of the gangway must have a slip resistant surface.</p> <p>Class I, II, or A</p> <p>12. The longitudinal slope of the gangway must not exceed 8%.</p> <p>Class III or B</p> <p>13. The longitudinal slope of the gangway must not exceed 12.5%.</p> <p>All classes</p> <p>14. The gangway slope in the case of the plane perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of symmetry of the vehicle must not exceed 5%.</p> <p>Intercommunicating Staircases</p> <p>All Classes double deck</p> <p>15. The upper deck gangway must be connected by one or more intercommunicating staircases to the access passage of a service door or to the lower deck gangway within 3 metres of a service door.</p> |

Gangways and Staircase 52M

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>16. It must be possible to move freely the form defined in the figure 8, starting from the gangway of the lower deck up to the last step, in the probable direction of motion of a person using the staircase.</p> <p>17. Intercommunicating staircase/s must afford protection so that, during heavy braking of the vehicle when moving in the forward direction, there is no danger of a passenger being projected downwards. The requirements are fulfilled if one of the following conditions is met (see Note 8).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. No part of the staircase is forward descending. b. The staircase is equipped with guards or a similar provision. c. There is an automatic device in the upper part of the staircase which prevents the use of the staircase when the vehicle is in motion; this device must be easily operable in an emergency. <p>18. The riser of each step in an intercommunicating staircase must be closed.</p> |

Gangways and Staircase 52M

Figure 1

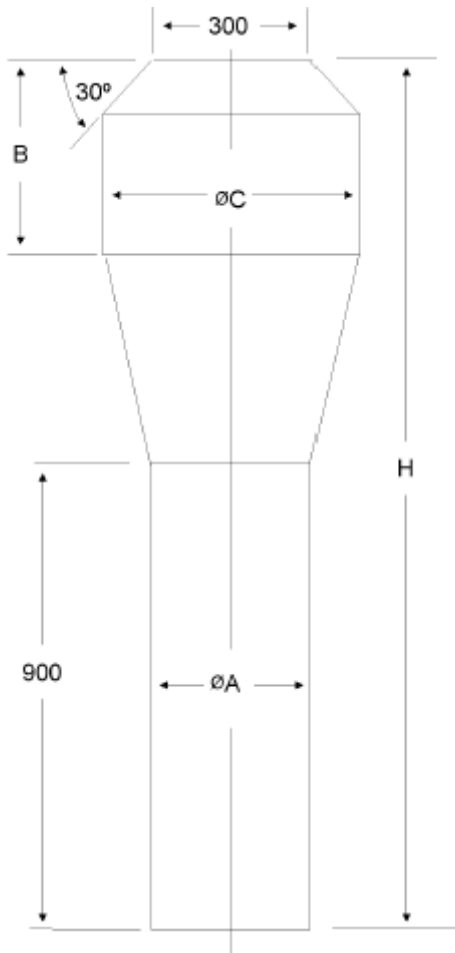
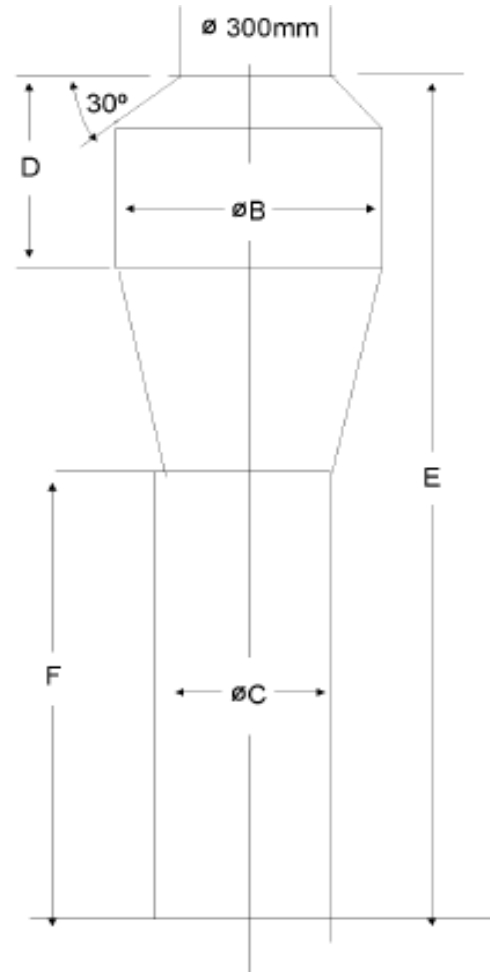


Figure 2



Gangways and Staircase 52M

Figure 3

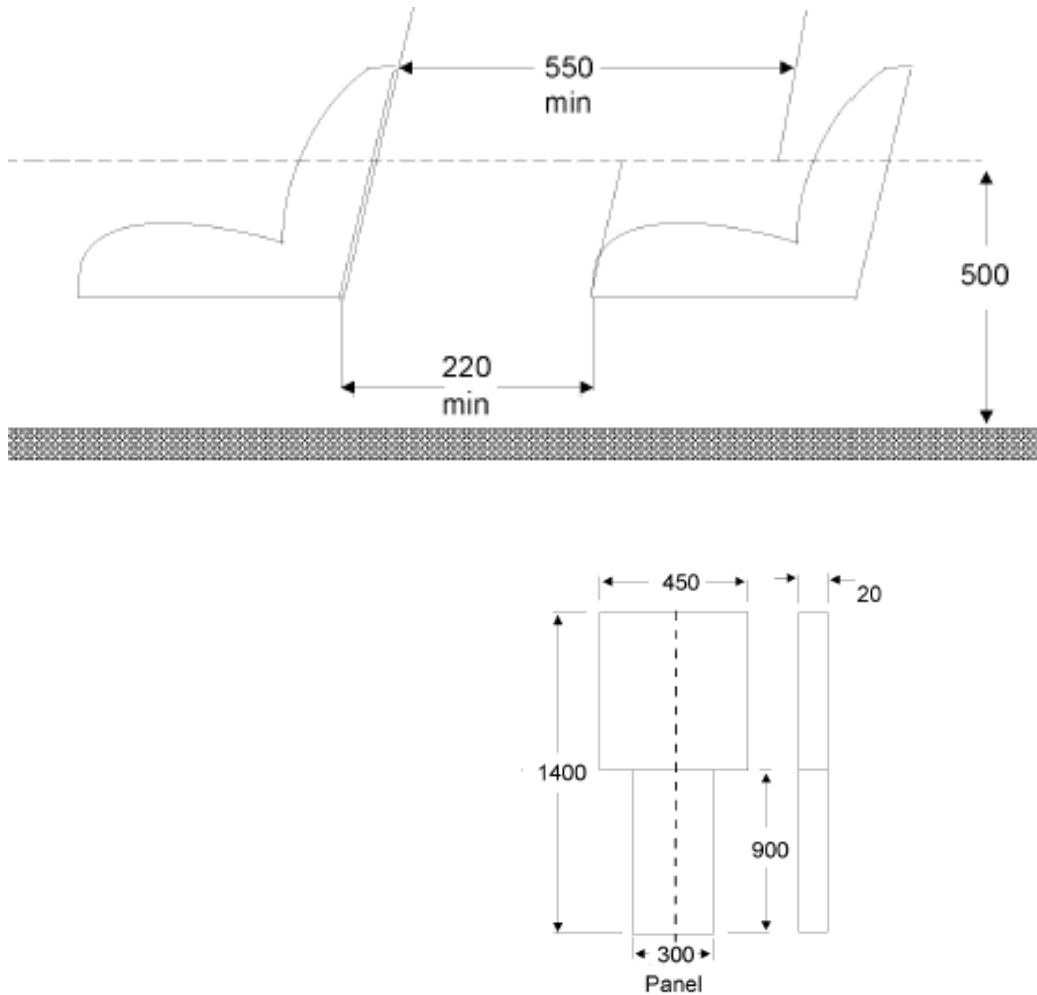


Figure 4

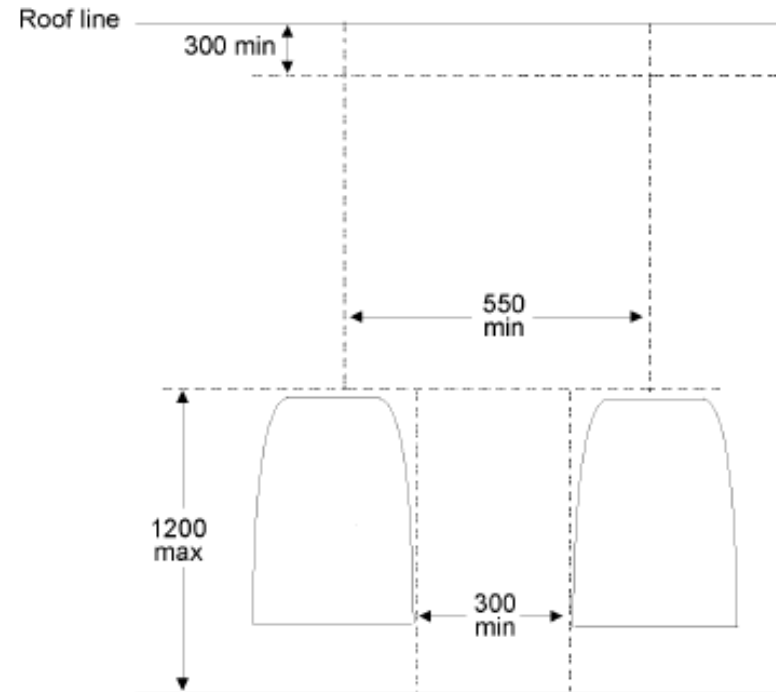


Figure 5

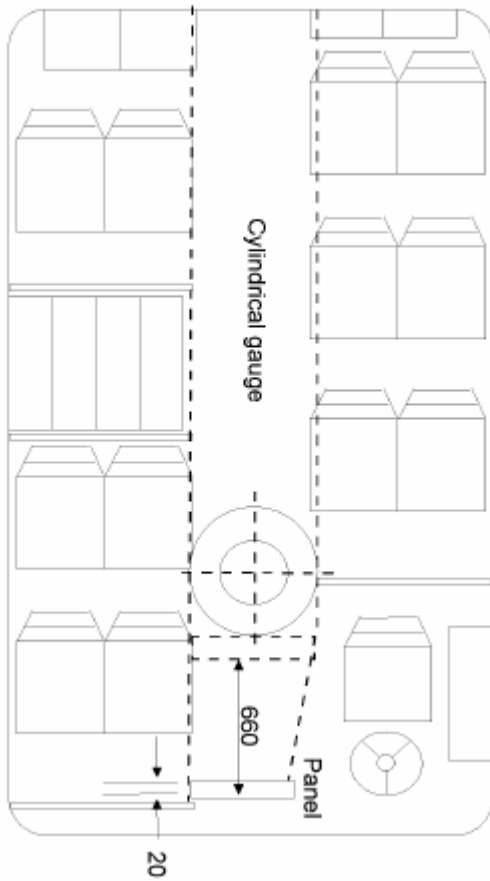


Figure 6

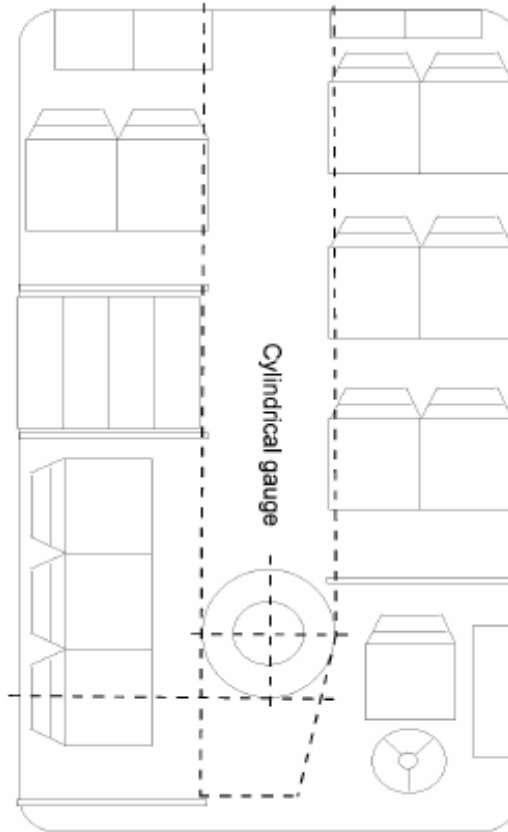


Figure 7

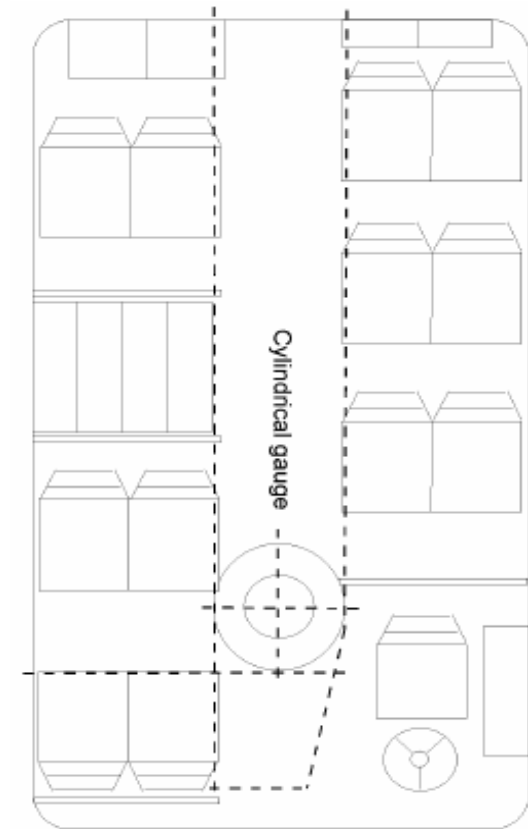
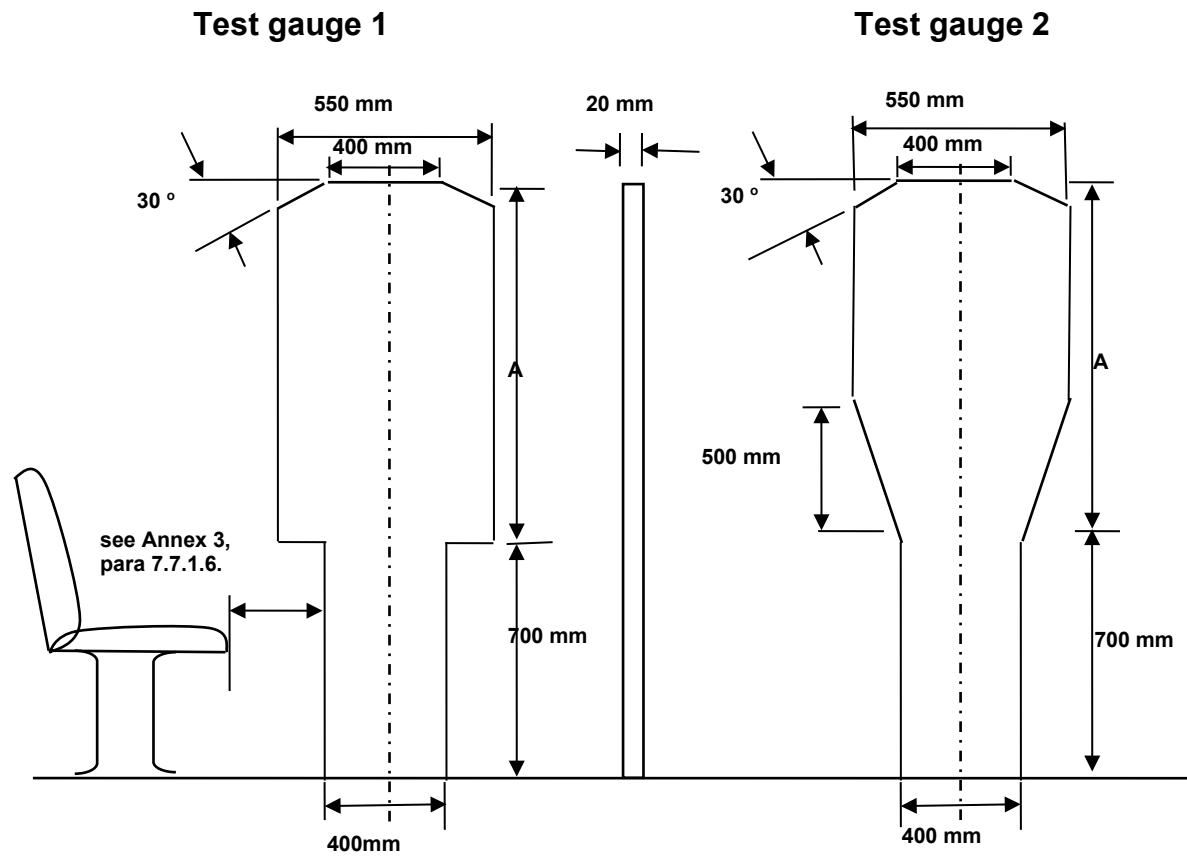


Figure 8



| Vehicle class | Height of the upper panel (mm) (Dimension 'A' Figure 1) | |
|---------------|--|--------------|
| | Test gauge 1 | Test gauge 2 |
| Class A | 950 ^{*/} | 950 |
| Class B | 700 ^{*/} | 950 |
| Class I | 1,100 | 1,100 |
| Class II | 950 | 1,100 |
| Class III | 850 | 1,100 |

^{*/} For vehicles of Class A or B, the lower panel may be displaced horizontally relative to the upper panel provided that it is in the same direction.

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 24/04/2010 | Correct spelling mistake in RS 8 |
| 3 | 03/05/2011 | TSE M2M3 52M 001 incorporated into manual |
| 4 | 31/07/2011 | Add two new required standards (1 & 2) renumber other standards |
| 5 | 30/11/2011 | Add new heading above RS 3 |
| 6 | 10/04/2018 | Insert new note 1 and link to RS2a |
| 7 | 01/07/2018 | Amend note 4 in line with Reg.107.06 |
| 8 | 01/09/2020 | New Note 7 and link to RS 3 |
| 9 | 15/04/2024 | Add new Note 8 referenced from RS 17 |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

52N Steps

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---------|---------------|---------|---------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|---------|---------------|----------------|---------|--|-----------------|--------------------|---------|---------|--------------------|-----|--|----------------|-----|--|
| <p>This section deals with the requirements regarding steps for passengers at service and emergency doors and within the vehicle.</p> <p>Note 1: For vehicles that have 1 or 2 seats alongside the driver, and these seats have no adequate access to the main passenger compartment, the steps leading to the driver's door, or the door giving access solely to the 2 seats alongside the driver, do not have to meet Required Standards 1 to 7. (An example of such a layout is shown in Figure 1 of Section 52H Number & Location of Exits.)</p> <p>Note 2: The height of a step shall be measured at the centre of its width.</p> <p>Note 3: The measurements should be taken with the kneeling system not activated and as far as the first step in relation to the ground should be measured with the vehicle on level ground, at its mass in running order and the tyre equipment and pressure being as specified by the manufacturer for the technically permissible maximum laden mass.</p> <p>Note 4: At a double doorway, the steps in each half of the access passage shall be treated separately.</p> <p>Note 5: The height of other steps (E) in figure 1 need not be the same for each step.</p> | <p>All steps</p> <p>1. All steps must meet the height and depth requirements shown in the table below:- (see Notes 1, 2, 3, 4 & 5 and Figure 1)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Classes</th> <th>I and A</th> <th>II, III and B</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">First step from the ground 'D'</td> <td>Max height in (mm)</td> <td>340 (1)</td> <td>380 (1)(2)(5)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Min depth (mm)</td> <td colspan="2">300 (*)</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Other Steps 'E'</td> <td>Max height in (mm)</td> <td>250 (3)</td> <td>350 (4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Min height in (mm)</td> <td colspan="2">120</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Min depth (mm)</td> <td colspan="2">200</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>(*) 230mm for vehicles having a capacity not exceeding 22 passengers. (1) 700mm in the case of an emergency door in a single deck : 850mm in the case of an emergency door in the lower deck of a double deck vehicle 1500mm in the case of an emergency door in the upper deck of a double deck vehicle. (2) 430mm in the case of a vehicle with solely mechanical suspension. (3) 300mm in the case of steps at a door behind the rearmost axle. (4) 250mm in gangways for vehicles having a capacity not exceeding 22 passengers. (5) For at least one service door: 400mm for other service doors.</p> <p>Note: 1. At a double doorway the steps in each half of the access passage shall be treated separately. 2. In the figure 1 below dimension E, need not be the same for each step.</p> | Classes | | I and A | II, III and B | First step from the ground 'D' | Max height in (mm) | 340 (1) | 380 (1)(2)(5) | Min depth (mm) | 300 (*) | | Other Steps 'E' | Max height in (mm) | 250 (3) | 350 (4) | Min height in (mm) | 120 | | Min depth (mm) | 200 | |
| Classes | | I and A | II, III and B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| First step from the ground 'D' | Max height in (mm) | 340 (1) | 380 (1)(2)(5) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Min depth (mm) | 300 (*) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Other Steps 'E' | Max height in (mm) | 250 (3) | 350 (4) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Min height in (mm) | 120 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Min depth (mm) | 200 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

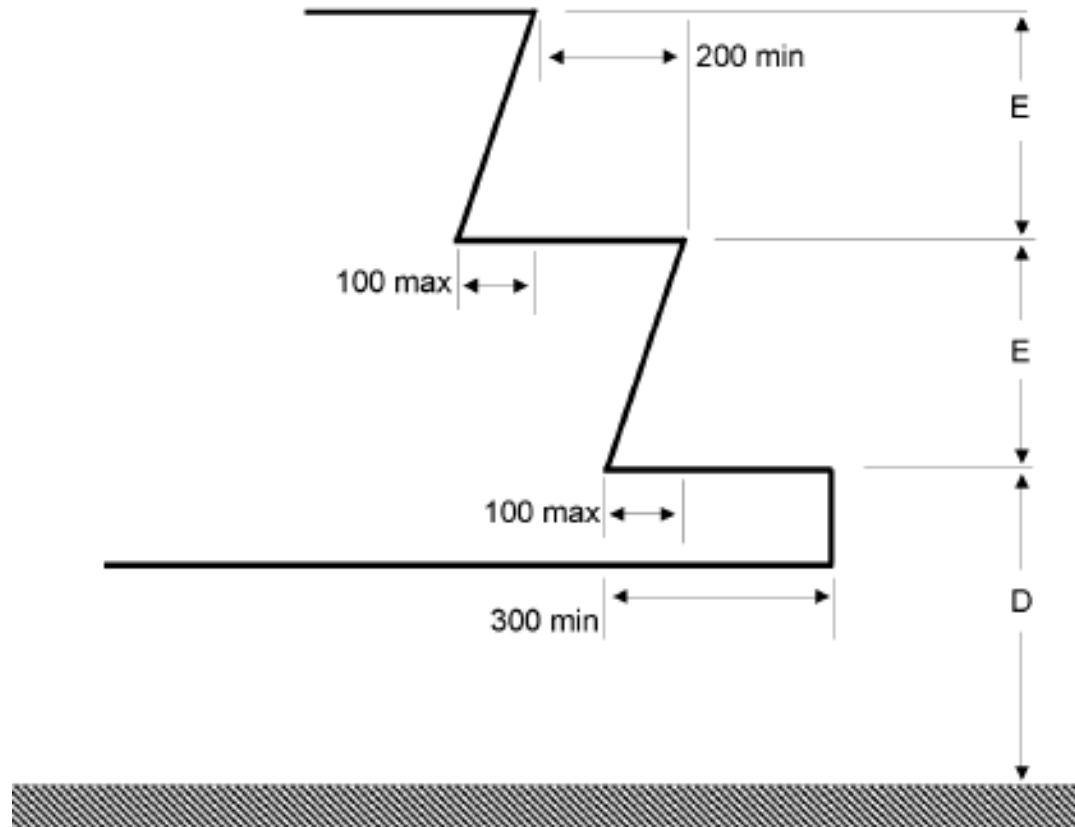
Steps 52N

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|-----------|-----------|----------------------|--|------|------|------|-----------------|-----------|-----------|--|------------------|-----------|-----------|
| <p>Note 6: A transition in height within the gangway is classed as a step.</p> <p>Note 7: Only the control switch will be classed as the device designed to operate the step.</p> <p>Note 8: Satisfactory documentary evidence must be provided for both:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • suitable testing of the step, and • the step is fitted to the vehicle as per manufacturer’s instructions <p>Note 9: For the purposes of this standard, 'drivers direct field of view' is to be taken as any view the driver can achieve whilst remaining seated in his driving seat, this may include the driver turning his head or upper body to gain the view, so long as he remains seated. (This definition is based on the fact the vehicle will be stationary, at the time this standard is to apply.)</p> | <p>2. The height of any transition from a sunken gangway to a seating area shall not be considered to be a step, however the vertical distance between the gangway surface and the floor of the seating area must not exceed 350 mm (see Note 6).</p> <p>3. The width and shape of every step must be such that a rectangle as prescribed in the table below can be placed on that step with not more than 5% of the area of the appropriate rectangle overhanging the step. At a double doorway, each half of the doorway must fulfil this requirement.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Number of passengers</th> <th>> 22</th> <th>≤ 22</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Area</td> <td>First step (mm)</td> <td>400 x 300</td> <td>400 x 200</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Other steps (mm)</td> <td>400 x 200</td> <td>400 x 200</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>4. For any steps fitted in the gangways, the width of such steps must not be less than the width of the gangway at the top of the steps.</p> <p>5. Where there is more than one step, each step must not extend into the area of the vertical projection of the next step by more 100 mm and the projection over the tread below leaves a free surface of at least 200 mm (see Figure 1).</p> <p>6. All step nosing’s must be designed such as to minimise the risk of tripping and must contrast visually with their immediate surroundings.</p> <p>7. The slope of any step must not exceed 5% in any direction (see Note 3).</p> <p>8. All steps must have a slip resistant surface.</p> | | | Number of passengers | | > 22 | ≤ 22 | Area | First step (mm) | 400 x 300 | 400 x 200 | | Other steps (mm) | 400 x 200 | 400 x 200 |
| Number of passengers | | > 22 | ≤ 22 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Area | First step (mm) | 400 x 300 | 400 x 200 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Other steps (mm) | 400 x 200 | 400 x 200 | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p><u>Additional Requirements for retractable steps</u></p> <p>The operation of retractable steps may be synchronised with that of the corresponding service or emergency door:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9. When the associated door is closed no part of the retractable step must project more than 10 mm beyond the adjacent line of the bodywork. 10. When the door is open and the retractable step is in the extended position, the surface area must conform to relevant requirements in 1. to 8. above. 11. Any power-operated step must have a system to prevent the vehicle moving from rest, under its own power, when the step is in the extended position. 12. Any manually operated step must have an audible indication to alert the driver when the step is not fully retracted. 13. Power operated steps must not be capable of being extended when the vehicle is in motion. 14. Power operated steps must conform to the following requirements:- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. If the device to operate the powered step fails, the step must retract and remain in the retracted position (see Note 7) b. The operation of the corresponding door must not be hindered in the event of a failure identified in a) above or should not be likely to be hindered by the step being damaged or obstructed. 15. For any doors not within the driver’s direct field of view (see Note 9):- If a passenger is standing on a power-operated retractable step, the corresponding door must be incapable of being closed. (Compliance with this requirement must be checked by placing a mass of 15 kg, representing a small child, at the centre of the step). |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>16. The corners of retractable steps facing forwards or rearwards must be rounded to a radius of not less than 5 mm; and the edges must be rounded to a radius of not less than 2.5 mm.</p> <p>17. When the passenger door is open and the step is in the extended (in use) position, the step must be held securely in this position</p> <p>18. When a mass of 136 kg is placed in the centre of a single step or a mass of 272 kg is placed in the centre of a double step the deflection at any point on the step, measured relative to the body of vehicle, must not exceed 10 mm (see Note 8).</p> |

Figure 1



Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Reword RS17 to incorporate the term 'in use'. |
| 3 | 22/01/2010 | Note 6 amended to give the required information. |
| 4 | 03/05/2011 | Add new Note 1 and 7, renumber other notes. |
| 5 | 11/02/2013 | Insert new Note 9 and link to RS 15. |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

520 Handrails and Handholds

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure that all relevant structural and positional requirements meet the required Standards.</p> <p>Note 1: Strap hangers, if fitted, may be counted as handholds, provided that they are held in their position by suitable means.</p> <p>Note 2: This does not apply to an area adjacent to a door where the door or its mechanism in open position would prevent the use of this handhold.</p> <p>Note 3: Exception may be given in the middle of large platforms, but the sum of these exceptions must not exceed 20% of the total standing area.</p> <p>Note 4: In the case of double doors this requirement can be fulfilled by fitting one central stanchion or one central handrail.</p> | <p><u>Handrails and handholds for standing passengers</u></p> <p>Classes I, II, & A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There must be adequate handrails and/or handholds (located between 800 mm and not more than 1950 mm above the floor) for every standing passenger, this can be assessed by using the following criteria; - <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. For all possible sites of the testing device shown in figure 1, at least two handrails or handholds, must be reached by the device's movable arm. (The testing device may be freely turned about its vertical axis) (see Note 1). b. For every standing position identified in a) above at least one of the two required handrails or handholds must not be more than 1500 mm above the level of the floor at that position (see Notes 2 & 3). c. Any areas where standing passengers are allowed and are not separated by seats from the side walls or rear wall of the vehicle must be provided with horizontal handrail/s parallel to the walls and installed at a height of between 800 mm and 1500 mm above the floor. <p><u>Handrails and handholds for service doors</u></p> <p>Class I, II, III</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. All service door apertures must have handrails and/or handholds on each side, having a grasping point available to a person, standing on the ground adjacent to the service door, situated, vertically, between 800 mm and 1100 mm above the ground, and not more than 400 mm inwards from the outer edge of the first step (see Note 4). |

Handrails and Handholds 520

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>Class A or B</p> <p>3. All service doors must have a handrail or handhold on at least one side of the door aperture (see Note 4).</p> <p>All Classes</p> <p>4. Each successive step/s in the access passage must have a handrail and/or handhold, between 800 mm and 1100 mm above the surface of each step, and for the position appropriate to a particular step, not outwards from the outer edge of the step considered, and not more than 600 mm inwards from that same edge (see Figure 2).</p> <p><u>Handrails and handholds for intercommunication staircases</u></p> <p>All Classes Double deck</p> <p>5. For a person standing on the lower deck adjacent to the intercommunication staircase, there must be a handrail and/or handhold positioned at each side of the staircase, between 800 mm and 1100 mm above the lower deck, and not more than 400 mm inwards from the outer edge of the first step.</p> <p>6. There must be handrails and/or handholds positioned at each side of the staircase, between 800 mm and 1100 mm above the tread edge of each step (including a person standing on the upper deck adjacent to the intercommunication staircase), not outwards from the outer edge of the step considered, and not more than 600 mm inwards from the same edge.</p> <p><u>General requirements for handrails and handholds</u></p> <p>All classes.</p> <p>7. All handrails and handholds must be of adequate strength.</p> <p>8. All handrails and handholds must be so designed and installed as to present no risk of injury to passengers.</p> |

Handrails and Handholds 520

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>9. All handrails and handholds must be of a section enabling passengers to grasp them easily and firmly.</p> <p>10. All handrails (except handrails on doors or those mounted solely to a seat and, in the case of a vehicle of Class II, III and B in access passages) must contain a length of at least 100mm conforming to the following requirements: -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. No dimension of the cross section must be smaller than 20 mm or greater than 45 mm <p>11. All handrails mounted on doors or those mounted solely to a seat and, in the case of a vehicle of Class II, III and B in access passages, must meet the requirements in a) above or contain a length of at least 100mm conforming to the following requirements, no dimension of the cross section must be smaller than 15 mm, the other dimension must be at least 25 mm and not greater than 45 mm.</p> <p>12. Required areas of handrails must not contain sharp bends.</p> <p>13. The clearance between a handrail or handhold (except handrails on doors or those mounted solely to a seat and, in the case of a vehicle of Class II, III and B in access passages) and the adjacent part of the vehicle body, seat, door or walls must be at least 40 mm.</p> <p>14. The clearance between any handrail on doors or those mounted solely to a seat and, in the case of a vehicle of Class II, III and B in access passages and the adjacent part of the vehicle body, seat, door or walls must be at least 35 mm.</p> <p>15. The surface of every handrail, handhold or stanchion must contrast visually with their immediate surroundings and be slip-resistant.</p> <p><u>Passenger protection on Vehicles without a roof</u></p> <p>All Classes</p> <p>16. The vehicle must have a continuous front panel over the full width of that part of the vehicle that does not have a roof, with a height of not less than 1,400 mm from the general level of the floor adjacent to the front panel;</p> |

Handrails and Handholds 520

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|---|
| | <p>17. The vehicle must have a continuous protection around the side and rear of that part of the vehicle that does not have a roof, with a height of not less than 1,100 mm at the sides and 1,200 mm at the rear of the vehicle, measured from the general level of the floor adjacent to the panels. The protection shall consist of continuous side and rear panels with a height of not less than 700 mm from the general level of the floor adjacent to the panels, combined with one or more continuous guard rail(s) that fulfils the following characteristics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. No dimension of its section must be less than 20 mm, or more than 45 mm; b. The size of any aperture between a guard rail and any adjacent guard rail or panel must not exceed 200 mm; c. It must be firmly attached to the structure of the vehicle; d. Doors at exits must be considered to form part of this protection. |

Figure 1

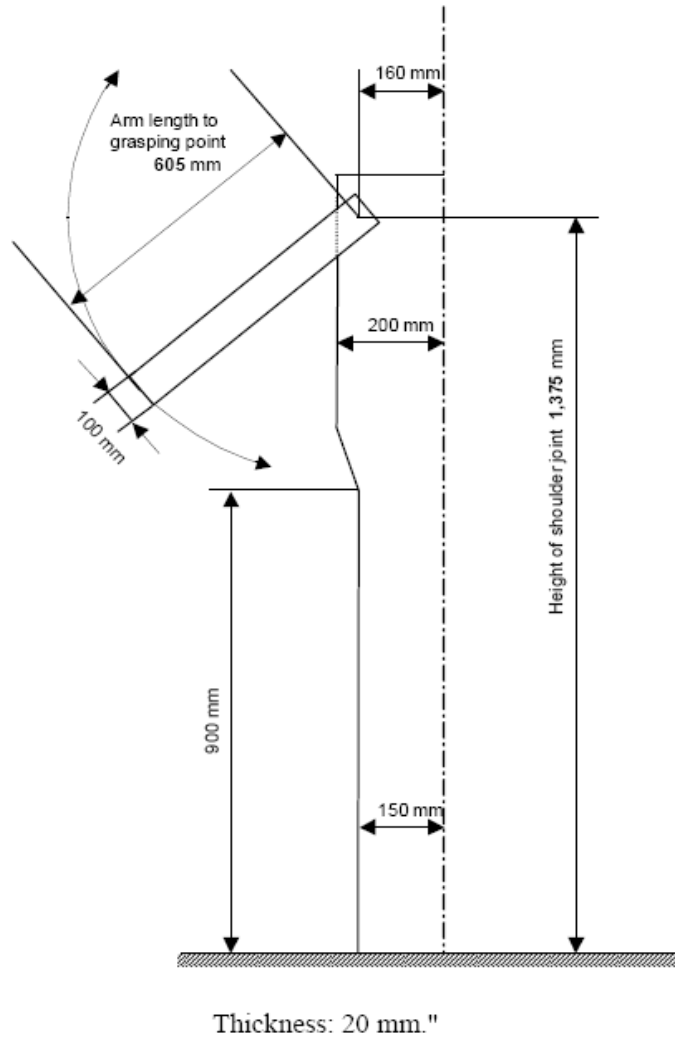
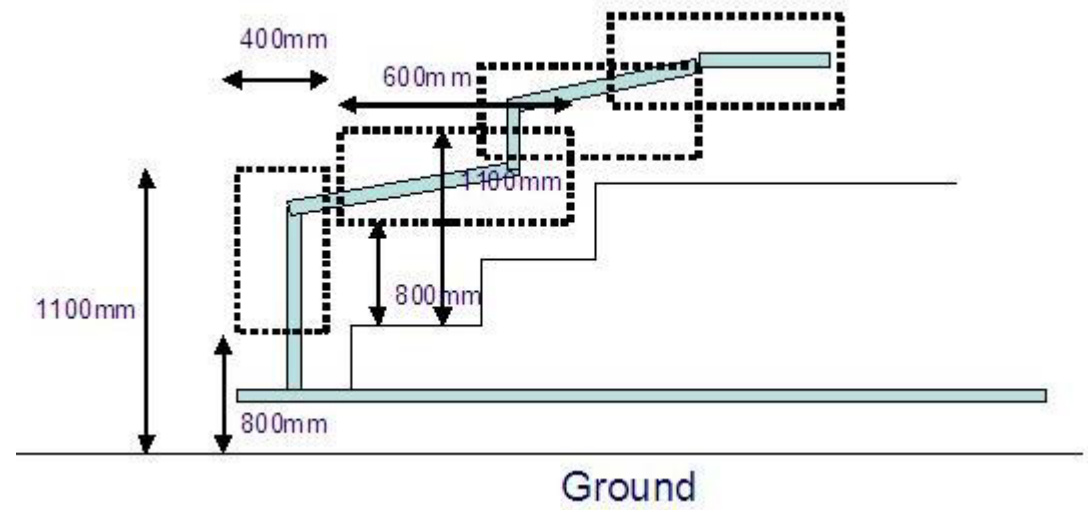


Figure 2



Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 22/01/2010 | Renumbered standards |
| 3 | 03/05/2011 | Rearrange section, move general requirements for handholds. |
| 4 | 11/02/2013 | Insert new Figure 2 and link to RS2 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52P Passenger Seats and Space

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|-----------------------------|-------|-----------------|-------|------------------|-------|---|-------|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure all passenger seats (including folding seats), and their associated free space meet the required Standards.</p> <p>Note 1: For vehicles 2,35 m in width or less, and Class IIIS, the width of the available space for each seating position, measured from a vertical plane passing through the centre of that seating position at heights between 270 and 650 mm above the uncompressed seat cushion shall be 200 mm.</p> <p>Note 2: For vehicles of class A or B in the case of seats adjacent to the wall of the vehicle, the available space does not include, in its upper part, a triangular area 20 mm wide by 100 mm high (see figure 2a). In addition, the space needed for safety belts and their anchorages and for the sun visor should be considered as exempted.</p> <p>Note 3: Single seats mounted next to each other would be counted as continuous seats and the lower dimension would apply. If there is an obvious gap between adjacent seats they must be considered individual seats.</p> | <p>All classes.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> All passenger seats must have a minimum width of seat cushion measured from a vertical plane passing through the centre of that seating position of (Dimension F in Figure 1):- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Class I, II, A, B, Class IIIS & Class III not more than 2.35 m wide - 200mm both sides of the centre line Class III over 2.35 m wide - 225mm both sides of the centre line All passenger seats must have a minimum depth of seat cushions of (Dimension K in Figure 2):- <table border="0" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td>Class I, A, B, & Class IIIS</td> <td style="text-align: right;">350mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Class II, & III</td> <td style="text-align: right;">400mm</td> </tr> </table> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Measured along the centre line of the seating position.</p> The height of the uncompressed seat cushion relative to the floor must be such that the distance from the floor to a horizontal plane tangential to the front upper surface of the seat cushion is between 400 and 500 mm: this height may however be reduced to not less than 350 mm at the wheel arches and at the engine compartment. (Dimension H in Figure 2.) The minimum width of the available space for each seating position, shown as dimension G figure 1 measured from a vertical plane passing through the centre of that seating position at heights between 270 and 650 mm above the uncompressed seat cushion must not be less than:- (see Notes 1, 2 & 3) <table border="0" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td>Individual seats</td> <td style="text-align: right;">250mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Continuous rows of seats for 2 or more passengers</td> <td style="text-align: right;">225mm</td> </tr> </table> | Class I, A, B, & Class IIIS | 350mm | Class II, & III | 400mm | Individual seats | 250mm | Continuous rows of seats for 2 or more passengers | 225mm |
| Class I, A, B, & Class IIIS | 350mm | | | | | | | | |
| Class II, & III | 400mm | | | | | | | | |
| Individual seats | 250mm | | | | | | | | |
| Continuous rows of seats for 2 or more passengers | 225mm | | | | | | | | |

Passenger Seats and Space 52P

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | |
|--|--|-----------------------------|-------|----------------|-------|
| <p>Note 4: All measurements should be taken, with the seat cushion and squab uncompressed, in a vertical plane passing through the centre line of the individual seating place. With reclining passenger seats and adjustable driving seats their seat backs and other seat adjustments should be in the normal position of use specified by the seat manufacturer. Any folding table fitted to a seat back must be in the folded (Stowed) position. Seats which are mounted on a track or other system which permits the operator or the user to easily vary the interior configuration of the vehicle need to be measured as presented.</p> <p>Note 5: The seat back of another preceding seat or a partition whose contour corresponds approximately to that of the inclined seat back may intrude into this space as long as it meets the requirements set out in RS5.a. The local presence in this space of seat legs is also be permitted provided that adequate space remains for the passenger's feet. In the case of seats alongside the driver's seat in vehicles of class A or B, intrusion of the dashboard, instrument panel, gear change control, windscreen, sun visor, seat belts and seat belt anchorages is allowed.</p> <p>Note 6: The local presence in the minimum clear space of seat legs, passenger footrests and of intrusions as provided by item 11 a to i shall be permitted provided that adequate space remains for the passengers' feet. This foot space may partly be situated in and/or above the gangway but shall not create any obstruction when measuring the minimum gangway width in accordance with section 52M. In the case of seats alongside the driver's seat in vehicles of class A or B, intrusion of the seat belts and seat belt anchorages shall be allowed.</p> | <p>5. The spacing of all passenger seats must meet the following minimum requirements: (See Figure 3 & Note 4)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the case of seats facing in the same direction, the distance between the front of a seat backrest and the back of the backrest of the seat preceding it shall when measured horizontally and at all heights above the floor between the level of the top surface of the seat cushion and a point 620mm above the floor be not less than <table border="0" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">Class I, A, B, & Class IIIS</td> <td>650mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Class II & III</td> <td>680mm</td> </tr> </table> b. Where transverse seats face one another the minimum distance between the front faces of the seat backrests of facing seats, as measured across the highest points of the seat cushions, shall be not less than 1300 mm. <p>Class B vehicles with a technically permissible maximum mass not exceeding 3,5 tonnes and up to 12 passengers seats.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Where a seat faces a partition, table, or similar structure there must be adequate space for passenger access. 7. For a seat behind a seat and/or a seat facing the gangway, an adequate clear foot space must be provided. <p>All classes other than a Class B vehicles with a technically permissible maximum mass not exceeding 3,5 tonnes and up to 12 passengers seats.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 8. Where a seat faces a partition or table or similar structure the requirements are shown in Figure 4 must be met (see Note 4). 9. For a seat behind a seat and/or a seat facing the gangway, a minimum clear foot space of at least 300 mm depth and at least the width specified in item 1 above must be provided as shown in Figure 5 (see Notes 5, 6 & 7). | Class I, A, B, & Class IIIS | 650mm | Class II & III | 680mm |
| Class I, A, B, & Class IIIS | 650mm | | | | |
| Class II & III | 680mm | | | | |

Passenger Seats and Space 52P

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>Note 7: For sideways facing seats over a wheel arch the foot space can be decreased to a minimum of 225mm.</p> <p>Note 8: For a vehicle of Class B with a technically permissible maximum mass not exceeding 3.5 tonnes and up to 12 passengers seats, and also for the seat(s) alongside the driver in a vehicle of Class A or B, this height dimension may be reduced to 1200 mm measured from the floor, and 800 mm measured from the highest point of the uncompressed seat cushion.</p> <p>Note 9: For double deck vehicles the free height measured from the highest point of the uncompressed seat cushion, should be no less than 900mm for the lower deck and 850mm for the upper deck.</p> <p>Note 10: This free space shall be extended over the zone defined, by longitudinal vertical planes 200 mm either side of the median vertical plane of the seating position, and by a transverse vertical plane through the rearmost upper point of the front face of the seat backrest and by a transverse vertical plane 280 mm in front of the foremost point of the uncompressed seat cushion, measured in each case at the median vertical plane of the seating position.</p> <p>Note 11: Front dome is taken to be the curved part of the roofline directly above the windscreen, used to accommodate destination signs etc.</p> | <p>Class A and Classes I & II not opting to comply with the Public Service Vehicle Accessibility Regulations (PSVAR) 2000. (See Foreword in Section 52Z)</p> <p>10. The following conditions must be met for Priority seating:-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. There must be at least four in class I, two in class II vehicles and one in a class A vehicle, forward or rearward facing seats specifically intended and marked for passengers with reduced mobility other than wheelchair users. b. The seats identified in a) above must comply with the requirements for priority seats in section 52Z. c. The seats identified in a) above must have suitably designed and placed handholds to facilitate entry and exit of the seat. d. The seats identified in a) above must be provided with communication devices complying with section 52Q of this manual, useable from the seated position. <p><u>Free Space for seating positions</u></p> <p>All classes</p> <p>11. Over each seating position and, except in the case of the front row seats in a vehicle up to 22 passengers, its associated foot space; there must be a free space with a height of not less than 900 mm measured from the highest point of the uncompressed seat cushion and at least 1350 mm from the mean level of the floor in the foot space (see Notes 7, 8, 9 & 10).</p> <p>From the edges of the space defined above the following intrusions are permitted:-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the case of the upper part of outboard seats, a zone with a rectangular cross-section 150 mm in height and 100 mm in width (see Figure 6). b. In the case of the upper part of outboard seats, a zone with a triangular cross-section whose apex is situated 700 mm from the top and whose base is 100 mm in width (See Figure 7). The space needed for safety belts and their anchorages and for the sun visor is also excluded. |

Passenger Seats and Space 52P

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. In the case of the footwell of an outboard seat, a zone of a cross-sectional area not exceeding 0,02 m² (0,03 m² for Class I low-floor vehicles) and having a maximum width not exceeding 100 mm (150 mm for Class I low-floor vehicles) (see Figure 8). d. For vehicles in class A or B. In the case of the seating places nearest to the rear corners of the body, the outer rear edge of the free space, viewed in plan, may be rounded to a radius not exceeding 150 mm (see Figure 9). e. Intrusion of the back of another seat, its supports, and its attachments (e.g. folding table). f. For class A, & B vehicles, intrusion of a wheel arch provided that one of the following two conditions is fulfilled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. The intrusion does not extend beyond the median vertical plane of the seating position (see Figure 10) or ii. The nearest edge of the area 300 mm in depth available for the feet of the seated passenger is advanced no more than 200 mm from the edge of the uncompressed seat cushion and to not more than 600 mm in front of the squab of the seat, these measurements being made in the median vertical plane of the seating position (see Figure 11). g. In the case of two seats facing each other the provision in “ f ii “ above shall apply to only one of the seats and the remaining space for the feet of seated passengers must be at least 400 mm in width; h. For vehicles of class A, or B. In the case of seats alongside the driver's seat, intrusion of the dashboard/instrument panel, windscreen, sun visors, seat belts, seat belt anchorages and front dome (see Notes 10 & 11). i. Intrusion of hopper type windows, when open, and their fittings. |

Passenger Seats and Space 52P

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|-----------------------------|--|
| | <p>Vehicles which contain seating intended solely for use when the vehicle is stationary, but which are not designed to carry more than eight persons (excluding the driver) when in motion.</p> <p>12. All seats not intended for use whilst the vehicle is in motion must be clearly marked to indicate their use.</p> |

Figure 1

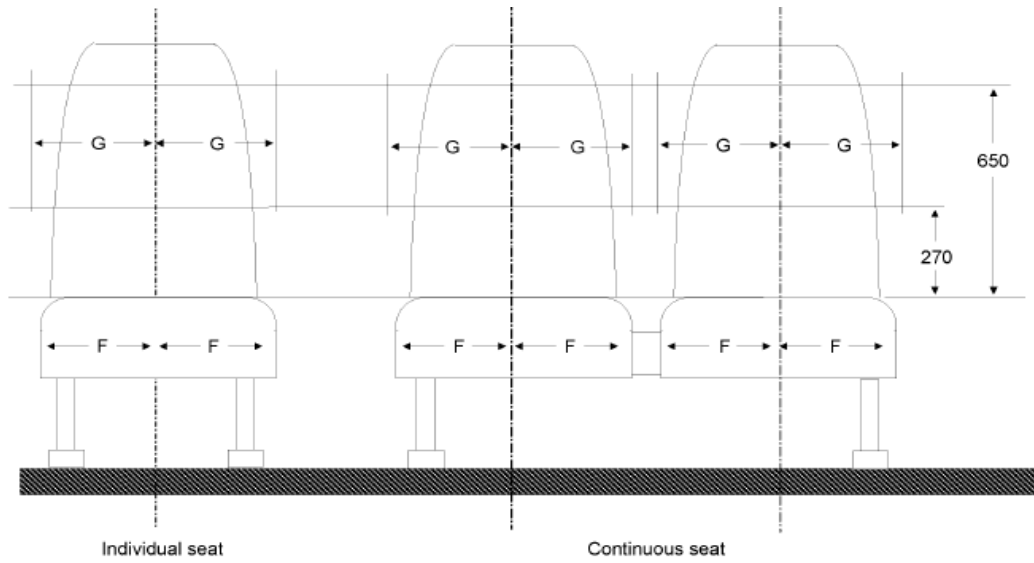


Figure 2

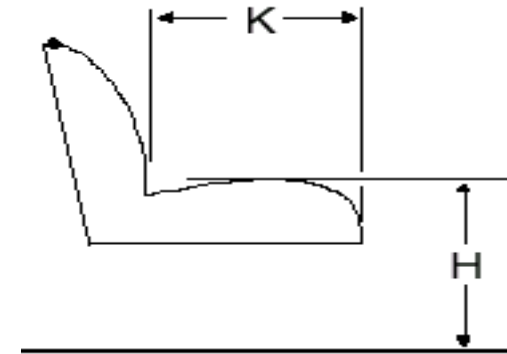


Figure 2a

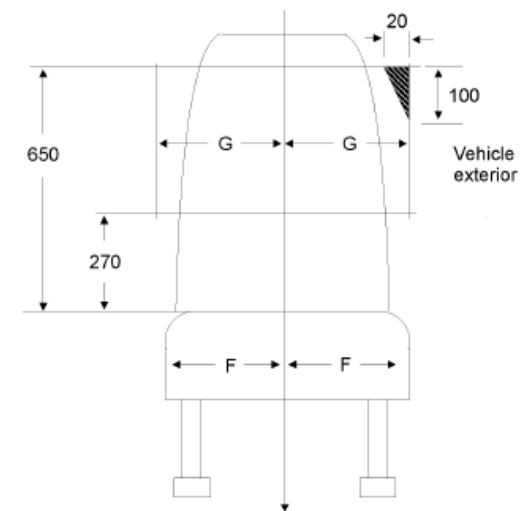


Figure 3

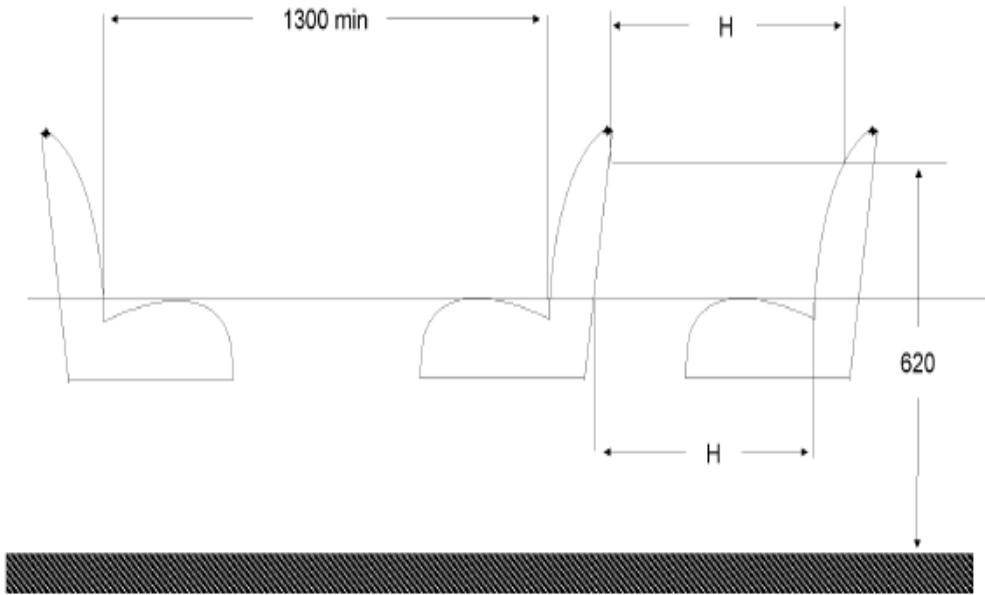


Figure 4

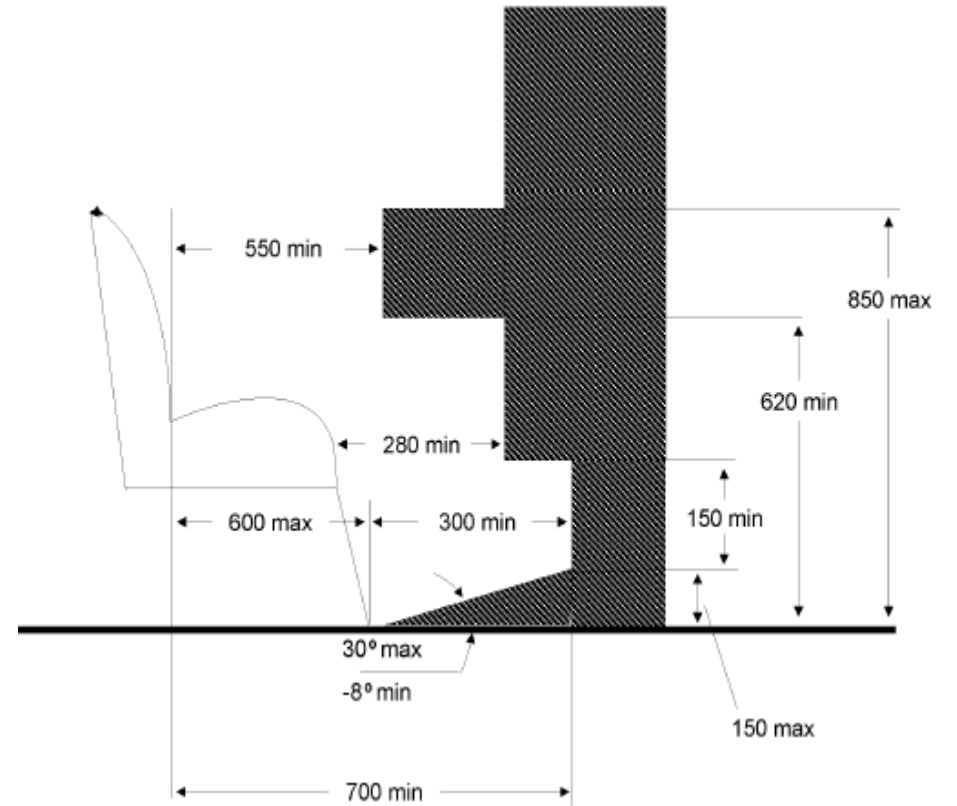


Figure 5

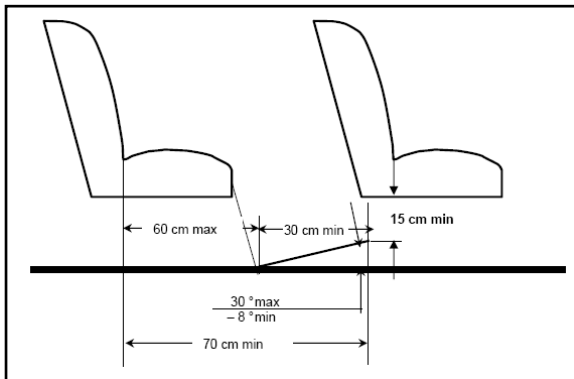


Figure 6

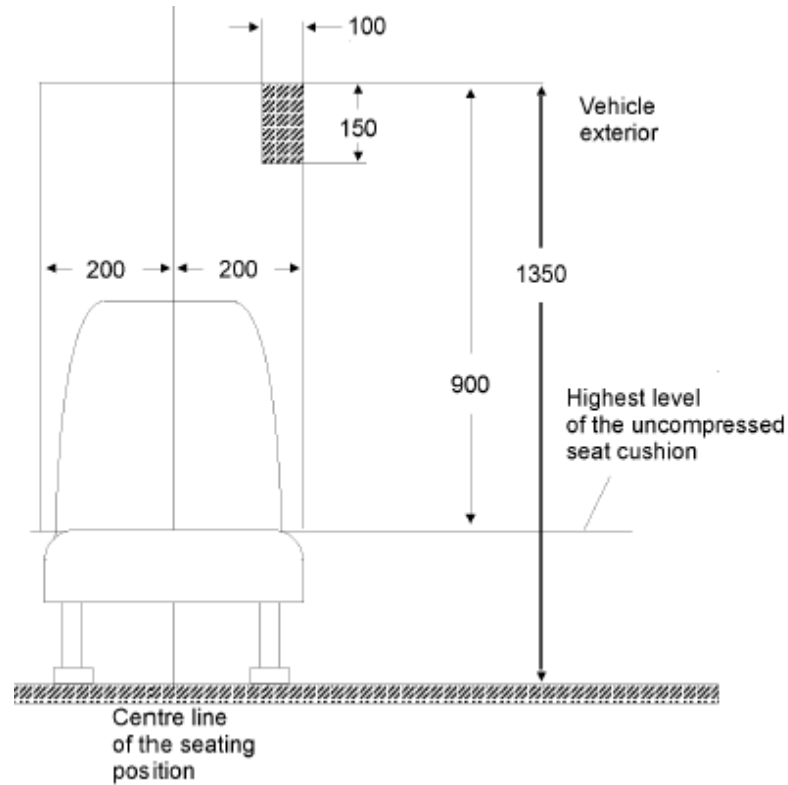


Figure 7

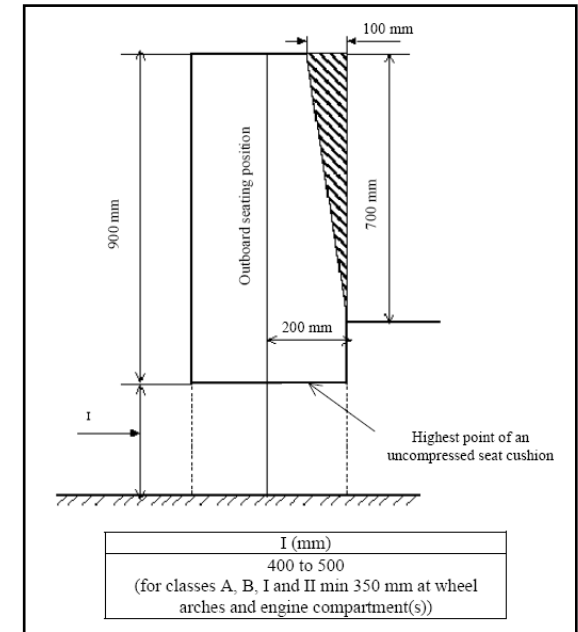


Figure 8

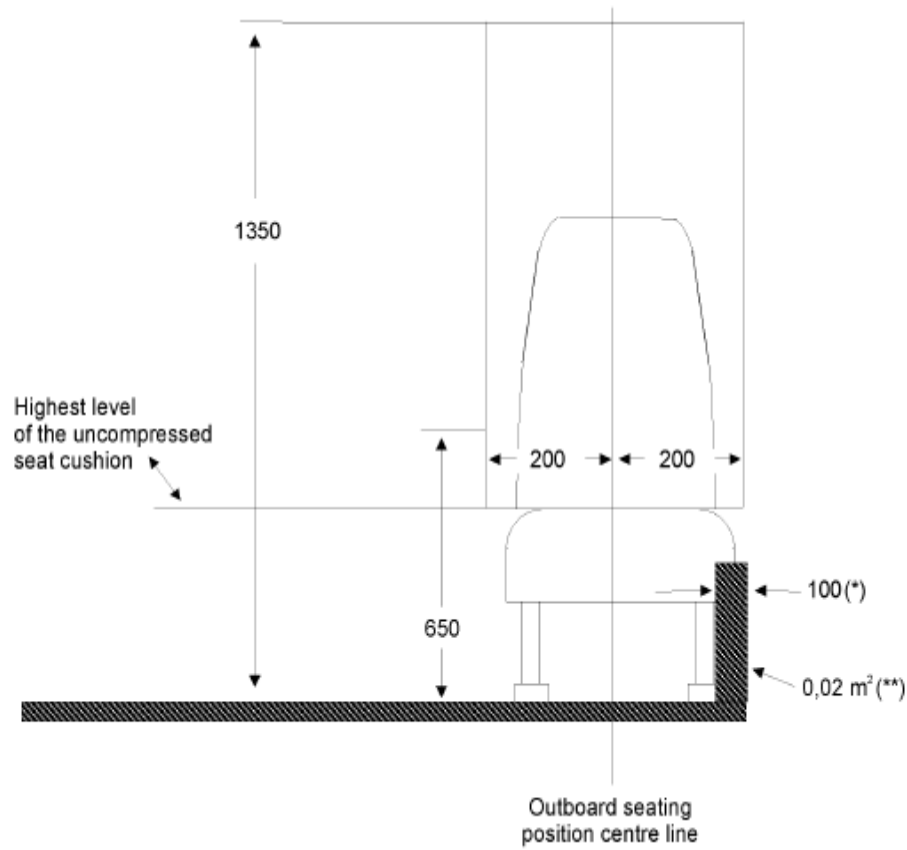


Figure 9

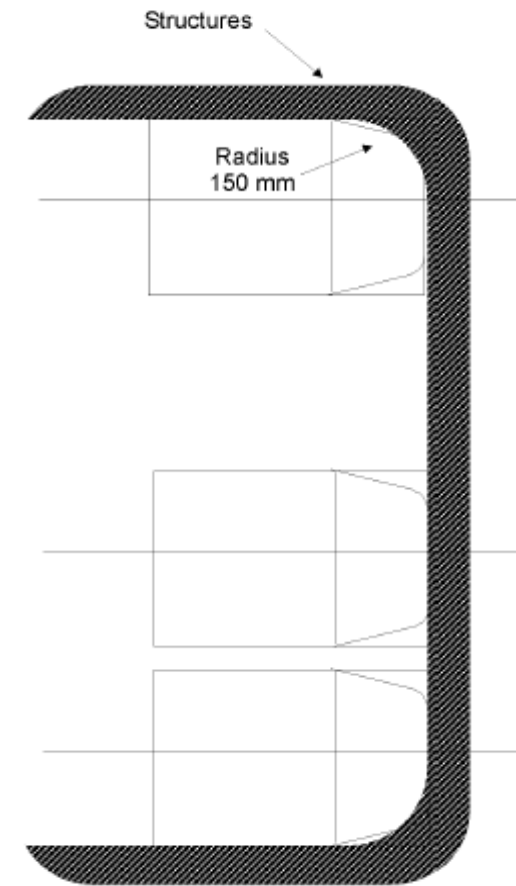


Figure 18

Figure 10

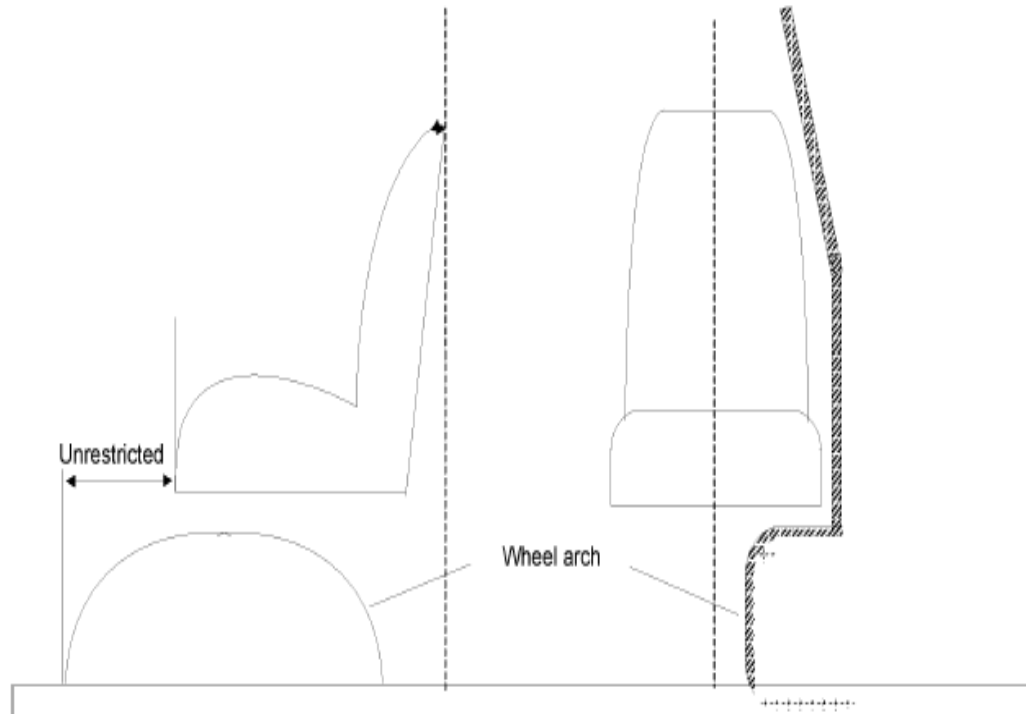
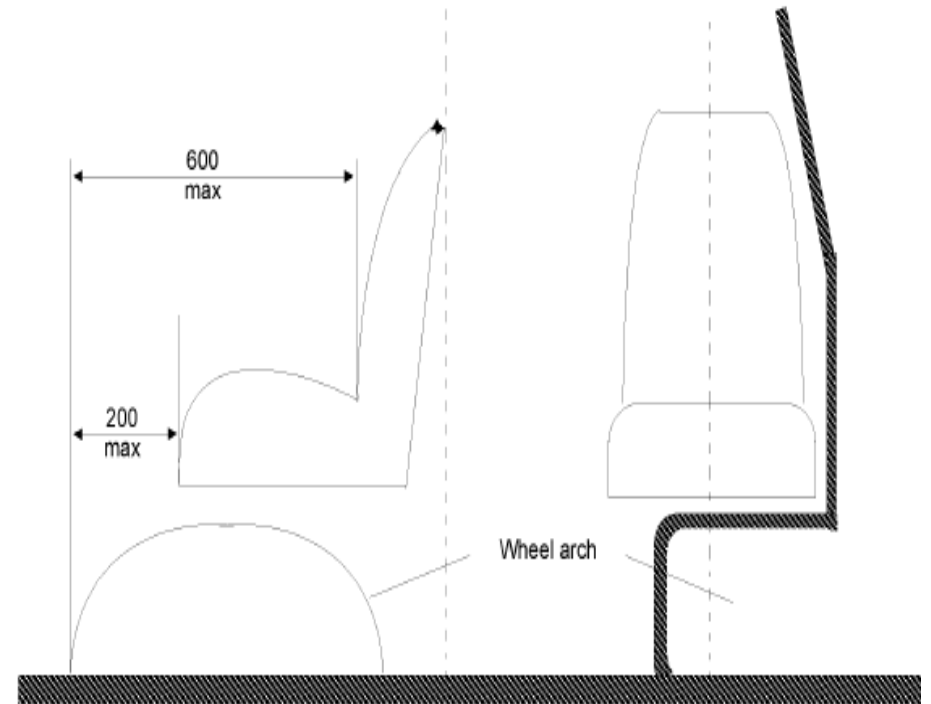


Figure 11



Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Change the word School Bus to Class 111S / change the word squab to backrest in RS 5 a & b |
| 3 | 29/10/2010 | Delete paragraph of text from RS7 |
| 4 | 31/07/2011 | Add new titles to list of Required Standards, add new standards and renumber list |
| 5 | 11/02/2013 | Insert new Note 6 and link to RS9 |
| 6 | 10/04/2018 | Insert new note 3 and link to RS4, amend header over RS10 amend RS1 |
| 7 | 01/09/2020 | Link RS 9 to Note 7, RS 11 to Note 10 and RS11(h) to Note 11 |
| 8 | 15/04/2024 | Correct Note reference at RS 5 |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

52Q Communication with Driver

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure adequate numbers of communication devices are fitted and meet the required Standards.</p> <p>Note 1: A minimum of a control for every third row of passenger seats would be classed as adequate.</p> <p>Note 2: Acceptable visual means include a mirror, periscope, or video camera/monitor.</p> | <p>Classes I, II & A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A means must be provided to signal the driver to stop the vehicle. 2. The controls for all such communication devices must be distributed adequately and evenly throughout the vehicle (see Note 1). 3. All controls must be capable of being operated with the palm of the hand. 4. The controls must not be more than 1500 mm from the floor of the vehicle. (this does not exclude the possibility of installing higher additional communication devices). 5. The controls must contrast visually with their immediate surroundings. 6. When the controls are activated, the activation must bring on an illuminated sign or signs displaying the words 'Bus Stopping' or equivalent wording or pictogram. (Articulated vehicles require signs in each rigid section of the vehicle. Double-deck vehicles require them on each deck). 7. The illuminated stopping signs must remain illuminated until the service door/s is opened. <p>All classes</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. For crew compartments that do not have access to the driver or passenger compartments, a means of communication between the driver and this crew compartment must be provided. |

Communication With Driver 52Q

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|---|
| | <p>9. Toilet compartments must be fitted with a means for summoning assistance in an emergency.</p> <p>Vehicles without a roof</p> <p>10. The driver must be provided with a visual means to enable the behaviour of passengers in the area without a roof to be observed (see Note 2).</p> <p>11. An intercommunication system must be provided to enable the driver to communicate with the passengers in the area without a roof.</p> |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

52R Hot Drinks Machine & Cooking Equipment

Application: All classes with hot drinks and/or cooking equipment

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure safety precautions meeting the required standard, are met on vehicles equipped with hot drinks and / or hot food equipment.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Any hot-drink machines and/or cooking equipment must be installed or guarded so that no hot food or drink is likely to be spilled on any passenger due to emergency braking or cornering forces. 2. Where vehicles are fitted with hot-drink machines and/or cooking equipment, all passenger seats must have adequate provision for setting down of both hot food and/or drink whilst the vehicle is in motion. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 11/02/2013 | Reword RS2 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52S Doors and Interior Compartments

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure every door to a toilet or other interior compartment, including cupboards etc. (but not including removable maintenance panels, or driver’s compartments), meets the required Standard.</p> <p>Note 1: Interior compartment is a separate compartment that can be opened without the use of tools.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All doors to interior compartments must be self-closing and must not be fitted with any device to hold it open if, when open, it could obstruct passengers in an emergency (see Note 1). 2. When a door is open it must not conceal any handle, control device for opening the door, or obligatory marking associated with any service door, emergency door, emergency exit, fire extinguisher or first kit aid. 3. Where the compartment can be occupied by a passenger, the door must not be capable of being locked from the outside unless it can always be opened from the inside. 4. Where the compartment can be occupied by a passenger, there must be a means to enable the door to be opened from outside the compartment in an emergency. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52T Artificial Lighting

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure that artificial lighting is fitted and meets the required standard.</p> <p>Note 1: Individual lights for each of the items listed are not required providing adequate illumination can be maintained during normal use.</p> <p>Note 2: A circuit serving only permanent entry and exit lighting can be considered as one of these circuits.</p> <p>Note 3: This could be by screens, partitions or the design of the lighting circuit, or a combination of these features.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The following areas must be adequately illuminated by electrical lighting (see Note 1): <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. All passenger compartments. b. Any crew compartments. c. Any toilet compartments. d. Any articulated sections of the vehicle. e. Any step or steps. f. The access to any exits and the area immediately around the service door(s) including, when in use, any boarding device fitted. g. The internal markings and internal controls of all exits. h. All places where there are obstacles. i. In the case of double deck vehicles without a roof, at least one lighting device must be placed as near as practicable to the top of every staircase leading to the upper deck. 2. There must be at least two internal lighting circuits such that failure of one will not affect the other (see Note 2). 3. There must be provisions to protect the driver from the effects of glare and reflections caused by artificial interior lighting. (see Note 3). Any lighting likely to affect adversely and significantly the driver's vision must only be capable of being operated while the vehicle is at rest. 4. Control of the mandatory interior lighting must be by manual switches under the control of the driver or automatically controlled. |

Artificial Lighting 52T

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>5. Additional exterior service door lighting to aid passengers boarding and alighting the vehicle and to enable the presence of a passenger on the ground outside the service door to be detected by the driver from his seat may be provided if it meets the following requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. It must be white in colour; b. It must illuminate a flat, horizontal portion of the ground having a width of 2 m measured from a plane parallel to the median longitudinal vertical plane of the vehicle which passes through the outermost point of the closed service door and over a length extending from a transverse plane which passes through the foremost edge of the closed service door to a transverse plane passing through the centre line of the foremost wheels situated to the rear of the service door, or, in the case where there are no such wheels, to a transverse plane passing through the rear of the vehicle; c. It must produce limited dazzle outside a zone on the ground having a maximum width of 5 m measured from the side of the vehicle and a maximum length limited by a transverse plane passing through the front of the vehicle and a transverse plane passing through the rear of the vehicle; d. If the lower edge of the lighting device is less than 2 m from the ground, it must not project more than 50 mm beyond the overall width of the vehicle measured without this device and have a radius of curvature of not less than 2.5 mm; e. It must be activated and deactivated manually by a separate switch, and; f. It must be installed so that the device can only be switched on when a service door is operated, and the vehicle speed does not exceed 5 km/h and is switched off automatically before the vehicle reaches a speed exceeding 5 km/h. |

Artificial Lighting 52T

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|-----------------|-------------|------------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 30/04/2012 | Add 'Exterior' to RS5 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

52U Guarding of Step Wells

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|---|
| <p>This inspection applies to all areas, where any seated passenger is likely to be thrown forward into a step well as a result of heavy braking and ensures safety precautions meeting the Required Standards are met.</p> <p>The inspection also applies to the front windscreen ahead of passengers occupying upper-deck front seats.</p> | <p>All classes</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All areas, where any seated passenger is likely to be thrown forward into a step well as a result of heavy braking, must either be fitted with a guard or, in the case of a class A or B vehicle, a seat belt. Where fitted, the guard must meet the following dimensional requirements: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) The guard must have a minimum height from the floor on which the passenger's feet rest of 800 mm. b) The guard must extend inwards from the wall of the vehicle at least as far as 100 mm beyond the longitudinal centre line of any seating position where the passenger is at risk or to the riser of the innermost step; whichever is the lesser dimension. <p>Double Deck vehicles. All classes</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. On the upper deck every intercommunication staircase well must be protected by an enclosed guard having the following minimum dimensions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) A minimum height of 800 mm measured from the floor. b) The lower edge of the guard is not more than 100 mm from the floor. 3. The front windscreen ahead of passengers occupying upper-deck front seats must be provided with a padded guard. The higher edge of that protection shall be situated vertically between 800 mm and 900 mm above the floor where the passenger's feet rest. |

Guarding of Step Wells 52U

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 10/04/2018 | Insert new paragraph in Mol |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52V Baggage and Occupant Protection

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| This inspection is to ensure that baggage racks and compartments meet the required Standards with regard to passenger safety. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. All baggage racks must be designed to prevent objects placed on them from falling on passengers, when the vehicle brakes, or is cornering.<li>2. All baggage compartments fitted inside the passenger compartment must be designed to prevent baggage from falling in the event of sudden braking.<li>3. If the driver's compartment is without a roof, the driver must have some special protection against strong wind, sudden dust, heavy rain, etc. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52W Trap Doors

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure all trap doors meet the required Standards.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. All trap doors that are not escape hatches, on the floor of a vehicle must be fitted and secured in a manner, that they cannot be dislodged or opened without the use of tools or keys.<li>2. The lifting and securing devices on all trap doors that are not escape hatches, on the floor of a vehicle; must not project by more than 8 mm above floor level.<li>3. The trap doors and their lifting and securing devices, which are not escape hatches, on the floor of a vehicle, must have the edges of their projections rounded. |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52X Visual Entertainment

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure all forms of visual entertainment for passengers, for example television monitors or videos, meet the required Standards.</p> <p>Note 1: This shall not apply to any television monitor or similar device used as part of the driver's control or guidance of the vehicle, for example to monitor service doors.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All visual entertainment screens must be located out of the driver's view when the driver is seated in his normal driving position (including any indirect view, i.e., through mirrors) (see Note 1). |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|----------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 31/07/2011 | Add additional text to RS1 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

52Y Articulated Section of Articulated Vehicles

Application: All classes of articulated vehicles

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|--|
| <p>This inspection is to ensure that the articulated section of an articulated vehicle meets the required Standards.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The articulated section that interconnects rigid portions of the vehicle must be so designed and constructed as to allow at least one rotary movement about at least one horizontal axis, and at least one vertical axis. 2. When the articulated vehicle at its mass in running order is stationary on a horizontal level surface, any uncovered gap between the floor of either of the rigid sections and the floor of the rotating base or of the element replacing that base must not exceed:- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. 10 mm when all the wheels of the vehicle are on the same plane. b. 20 mm when the wheels of the axle adjacent to the articulated section are resting on a surface which is 150 mm higher than the surface on which the wheels of the other axles are resting. 3. When the articulated vehicle at its mass in running order is stationary on a horizontal level surface, the difference in level between the floor of the rigid portions and the floor of the rotating base, measured at the joint, shall not exceed: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. 20 mm when all the wheels of the vehicle are on the same plane b. 30 mm when the wheels of the axle adjacent to the articulated section are resting on a surface which is 150 mm higher than the surface on which the wheels of the other axles are resting |

Articulated Section of Articulated Vehicles 52Y

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|----------------------|--|
| | <p>4. On vehicles that do not comply with the conditions in 2 & 3 above, or Where the floor cannot carry the mass of the passengers, or Where the movements of the walls constitute a danger to passengers Means must be provided to physically prevent access by passengers to any part of the articulated section.</p> <p>5. When the vehicle is moving in a straight line the longitudinal median planes of its rigid portions must coincide and form a continuous plane without any deflection.</p> |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

52Z Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility

Foreword

- **Class I vehicles**

Must comply with this section (52Z) or alternatively the applicant may opt to comply with the requirements of The Public Service Vehicles Accessibility Regulations 2000 or the Technical requirements of Public Service Vehicles Accessibility Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2003. If the applicant requires an accessibility certificate with a vehicle utilising section 52Z then the vehicle must comply with the destination requirements of 'The Public Service Vehicles Accessibility Regulations 2000.

- **For Class II and III vehicles requiring an Accessibility certificate**

Can obtain an Accessibility Certificate, by full compliance with this section (52Z) and the destination requirements of 'The Public Service Vehicles Accessibility Regulations 2000 or alternatively, by compliance with the requirements of 'The Public Service Vehicles Accessibility Regulations 2000 or the Technical requirements of the Public Service Vehicles Accessibility Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2003.

- **For vehicles not requiring an Accessibility certificate**

Any accessibility features fitted to the vehicle must comply with the relevant requirements of this section (52Z).

Note: Vehicles requiring a Accessibility Certificate will need a separate application and Fee.

Application: All Classes

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>This section deals with the technical requirements for devices facilitating access for passengers with reduced mobility.</p> <p>All the relevant requirements of this section must be complied with in full for vehicles of Class I, or any vehicle of Class II or III requiring the equivalent of an Accessibility Certificate.</p> <p>For vehicles not requiring an Accessibility Certificate, any features fitted in the vehicle, to facilitate access by passengers with reduced mobility, must comply with the relevant requirements contained in this section.</p> <p>Note 1: The transition from a sunken gangway to a seating area shall not be considered to be a step.</p> <p>Note 2: Intrusion of a seat back or other object into this space shall be permitted provided that a minimum clear vertical space extending 230 mm in front of the seat cushion is maintained.</p> <p>Note 3: Where the priority seat is positioned facing a bulkhead more than 1,200 mm in height this space shall be 300 mm.</p> <p>Note 4: From the edges of the free space defined, intrusions are permitted in accordance with paragraphs 11 (a) to 11 (d) of section 52P.</p> <p>Note 5: For vehicles of class A, in the case of seats adjacent to the wall of the vehicle, the available space does not include, in its upper part, a triangular area 20 mm wide by 100 mm high In addition, the space needed for safety belts and their anchorages and for the sun visor should be considered as exempted.</p> | <p>Steps</p> <p>Class I & A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The height of the first step from the ground of at least one service door must not exceed 250 mm. or <p>As an alternative, the first step from the ground must not exceed 270 mm in two door openings, one entrance and one exit. (A kneeling system and/or retractable step may be engaged).</p> <p>Class II, III, & B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. The height of the first step from the ground of at least one service door must not exceed 320 mm. (A kneeling system and/or retractable step may be engaged.) <p>All Classes</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. If only one service door meets this requirement there must be no barrier or sign which prevents that door from being used as both an entrance and an exit. <p>Class 1 & A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. The height of steps in an access passage in the gangway between the service door meeting the requirements of RS1 or 2 and the priority seats must not be more than 200 mm (see Note 1). <p>Class II, III, & B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. The height of steps in an access passage in the gangway between the service door meeting the requirements of RS1 or 2 and the priority seats, must not be more than 250 mm (see Note 1). |

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Note 6: Intrusions of handholds or handrails may protrude by a maximum of 100 mm from the sidewall into the clear space over the vertical projection of the foot space.</p> <p>Note 7: These maximum slopes may override some of the slope requirements in RS 13 & 14 of section 52M Gangways, and RS 60 of section 52I Service Doors.</p> <p>Note 8: In the case of a rearward facing wheelchair the slope in the longitudinal direction shall not exceed 8 per cent provided that this slope inclines upwards from the front end to the rear end of the special area.</p> <p>Note 9: In the case of a wheelchair space designed for a forward facing wheelchair, the top of preceding seat-backs may intrude into the wheelchair space if a clear space is provided as shown in Figure 2.</p> <p>Note 10: For vehicles of Class B fitted with more than one wheelchair space, the second and subsequent wheelchair spaces, must have a special area at least, 700mm wide and 1200mm long.</p> <p>Note 11: In the case of vehicles of Class I and A fitted with more than one wheelchair space this test must be completed for each wheelchair space with all other wheelchair spaces occupied by the reference wheelchair.</p> <p>Note 12: A minimum of one complete set of wheelchair / wheelchair user, restraints needs to be with the vehicle at time of examination.</p> | <p><u>Priority seats and space for passengers with reduced mobility</u></p> <p>All Classes with mandated priority seats (see Section 52P) or optionally fitted priority seats</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. There must be adequate space for a guide dog under, or adjacent to, at least one of the priority seats. This space must not form a part of the gangway. 7. Armrests must be fitted on seats between the seating position and the gangway and must be capable of being moved easily out of the way to permit clear access to the seat. In the case of seats facing each other one of the gangway seats may alternatively be fitted with a vertical stanchion. This stanchion must be positioned so that the seat occupant is kept securely on the seat and easy access to the seat is possible. 8. The legal minimum width of a priority seat cushion, measured from a vertical plane passing through the centre of that seating position, must be 220 mm on each side. 9. The height of the uncompressed priority seat cushion relative to the floor must be such that the distance from the floor to a horizontal plane tangent to the front upper surface of the seat cushion is between 400 mm and 500 mm. 10. The foot space at priority seating positions must extend forward of the seat from a vertical plane through the forward edge of the seat cushion. The foot space must not have a slope in any direction of more than 8 percent. <p>Class I & A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 11. Each priority seating position must have a free height of not less than 1,300 mm, measured from the highest point of the uncompressed seat cushion. This free height must extend over the vertical projection of the whole of the seat area and the associated foot space (see Notes 2 to 6). <p>Class II</p> |
|---|---|

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

Note 13: Where a vehicle is fitted with a lift, at the rear that stows below the floor line of the vehicle and the rear door/doors of the vehicle are classed as an Emergency Exit, then the following criteria will apply.

If when stowed the lift or its associated components protrude, from the rearmost point of the vehicle by at least :-

For vehicles of Class A or B 230mm, **or**

For vehicles of Class I, II, III more than 300mm,

The top surface of the lift / components will be classed as the first step from the ground and must meet the criteria set out in Section 52N (Steps), with the exception of the 120mm height between steps required in standard 1 of that section.

Note 14: A ramp composed of several parts may be accepted providing these do not include upstands or edges which would present an obstruction or trip hazard (unless at the outer edge as required by RS58. The parts of the ramp must remain securely attached together when assembled for use.

Note 15: In the case of manually operated ramps which deploy rearwards out of the rear of the vehicle, the requirement that they cannot deploy on a moving vehicle will not apply, on condition that there is an audible warning alerting the driver to the door being opened (the warning should be on the door catch movement, and not movement of the door) and that the door is physically prevented from closing when the ramps are in a deployed position; the requirement is considered to be met if the door is physically prevented from fully closing by the ramp itself.

Note 16: The dimension of the platform should be the minimum net area, excluding gaps, railings, etc.

12. Each priority seating position must have a free height of not less than 900 mm, measured from the highest point of the uncompressed seat cushion. This free height must extend over the vertical projection of the whole of the seat and the associated foot space (see **Notes 2 to 6**).

All Classes

13. Vehicles fitted with a priority seat must have pictogram(s) in accordance with Figure 1 visible from the outside, both on the front nearside of the vehicle and adjacent to the relevant service door(s). A pictogram must be placed internally adjacent to the priority seat/s.

Communication devices

14. Communication devices must be placed adjacent to any priority seat and within any wheelchair area and must be at a height between 700 mm and 1,200 mm above the floor (only applicable if full compliance with 52Z is required).

15. Communication devices situated in the low floor area must be at a height between 800 mm and 1,500 mm where there are no seats.

16. If a vehicle is fitted with a ramp or lift, a means of communication with the driver must be fitted on the exterior of the vehicle, adjacent to the door and at a height between 850 mm and 1,300 mm from the ground. (This requirement does not apply to a door situated in the direct field of vision of the driver), (only applicable if full compliance with 52Z is required).

Handrails to priority seating

17. A horizontal handrail at a height of between 800 mm and 900 mm above the floor level must be provided between the priority seats and at least one service door suitable for boarding and alighting. A break is permitted where it is necessary to gain access to a wheelchair space, a seat, a staircase, an

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

access passage, or a gangway. Any break in the handrail must not exceed 1,050 mm and a vertical handrail must be provided on at least one side of the break.

- 18.** Handrails or handholds must be placed adjacent to priority seating positions to facilitate entry and exit of the seat and must be designed in such a way as to allow the passenger to grasp them easily.

Floor slope

- 19.** The slope of any gangway, access passage or floor area between any priority seat or wheelchair space and at least one entrance and one exit or a combined entrance and exit must not exceed 8 per cent. Such sloping areas must be provided with a slip-resistant surface (see **Note 7**).

Wheelchair accommodation provisions

- 20.** For each wheelchair user provided for in the passenger compartment there must be a special area at least 750 mm wide and 1,300 mm long. The longitudinal plane of the special area must be parallel to the longitudinal plane of the vehicle and the floor surface of the special area must be slip-resistant and the maximum slope in any direction shall not exceed 5 per cent (see **Notes 8, 9 & 10**).
- 21.** There must be at least one doorway through which wheelchair users can pass. In the case of vehicles of Class I, at least one wheelchair access door shall be a service door. The wheelchair access door must bear a boarding device complying with the provisions for a lift or a ramp.
- 22.** The minimum width of all door apertures providing wheelchair access to the vehicle must be 900 mm, (this may be reduced by 100 mm when the measurement is made at the level of handholds).
- 23.** A door for wheelchair access, which is not a service door, must have a minimum height of 1,400 mm.

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

24. It must be possible to move from the outside of the vehicle through at least one of the doors for wheelchair access into the special area(s) with a reference wheelchair of the dimensions shown in Figure 3. (Features within the vehicle that are designed to be moved/removed to gain this access are permitted as long as adequate signage indicating the procedure are displayed) (for Class I and A vehicles with more than one wheelchair space see **Note 11**).
25. In vehicles of Class I and A fitted with a ramp for wheelchair access, it must be possible for a reference wheelchair having the dimensions shown in Figure 3, to enter and exit a vehicle with the wheelchair moving in a forward direction.
26. Vehicles fitted with a wheelchair space must have pictogram(s) in accordance with figure 4 visible from the outside, both on the front nearside of the vehicle and adjacent to the relevant service door(s).
27. Pictograms conforming to Figure 4 must be placed internally adjacent to each wheelchair space indicating whether the wheelchair is to be positioned facing the front or the rear of the vehicle.

Seats and standing passengers in the wheelchair space

28. Folding seats may be fitted in a wheelchair space. However, such seats when folded into the stowed position and not capable of use by a seated passenger, must not intrude into the wheelchair space.
29. A vehicle may be equipped with demountable seats fitted in the wheelchair space provided that such seats may be easily removed by the driver or a crew member.
30. Where the foot space of any seat, or part of a folding seat when in use, intrudes into a wheelchair space, those seats must have signs fixed on or adjacent to them with the following text, equivalent text, or pictogram:

'Please give up this space for a wheelchair user'

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

31. In vehicles where any wheelchair space is designated for use exclusively by a wheelchair user, those spaces must be clearly marked with the following text, equivalent text, or pictogram:

‘Area designated for use exclusively by a wheelchair user’

Stability of wheelchairs

32. For vehicles required to have seat belts fitted. The wheelchair space must be designed for the wheelchair user to travel facing forwards and must be fitted with restraint systems complying with either the requirements specified in Annex 1 or those specified Annex 2 of this section (see **Note 12**).

33. For vehicles not required to have seat belts fitted. The wheelchair space may comply with the requirements of standard 32 or shall comply with the requirements specified Annex 3 (rearward facing unrestrained wheelchairs).

Door Controls

34. If a door intended for wheelchair access, is fitted with opening controls for use under normal circumstances, these controls must meet the following criteria:

- i) In the case of exterior controls, be on or adjacent to that door at a height between 850 mm and 1,300 mm from the ground and be not more than 900 mm from the door,

and

- ii) In the case of interior controls in vehicles of Class I, II and III, be on or adjacent to that door at a height of between 850 mm and 1,300 mm from the upper surface of the floor nearest the control and be not more than 900 mm in any direction from the door aperture.

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

Provisions for boarding devices (Lifts, Ramps & Kneeling Systems)**General requirements for all boarding devices**

35. The controls actuating the boarding devices must be clearly marked as such.
36. The extended or lowered position of the boarding device must be indicated by a tell-tale (optical) to the driver.
37. In the event of the failure of a safety device, lifts, ramps, and kneeling systems shall be incapable of operation, unless they can be safely operated by manual effort. The type and location of the emergency operating mechanism shall be clearly marked.
38. In the event of power failure, lifts and ramps must be capable of manual operation.
39. Access to one of the service or emergency doors on the vehicle may be obstructed by a boarding device providing the following two conditions are satisfied from **both inside and outside** the vehicle.
 - a. The boarding device does not obstruct the handle or other device for opening the door.
 - b. The boarding device can be readily moved to leave the doorway clear for use in an emergency.

Specific requirements for Kneeling Systems

40. A kneeling system must be provided with a switch to enable and disable its operation.
41. Any control which initiates the lowering or raising of any part or the whole of the bodywork relative to the road surface must be clearly identified and be under the direct control of the driver.

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

42. The lowering process must be capable of being stopped and immediately reversed by a control both within the reach of the driver, whilst seated in the cab, and also adjacent to any other operating controls provided for the operation of the kneeling system.

43. Any kneeling system that is fitted to a vehicle must not allow the vehicle to be driven at a speed of more than 5 km/h when the vehicle is lower than the normal height of travel.

General requirements for Lifts.

44. Lifts must only be capable of operation when the vehicle is at standstill.

45. Any movement of the platform must be prevented unless a device preventing the wheelchair from rolling off has been activated or has automatically come into operation.

46. The lift platform must not be less than 800 mm wide, and not less than 1,200 mm long (see **Notes 13 & 16**).

47. The lift must be capable of operating when carrying a mass of at least 300 kg.

Specific requirements for power operated lifts

48. The operating control must be designed in such a way that, if released, it automatically returns to the off position. As it does so the movement of the lift must immediately be stopped, and it must be possible to initiate a movement in either direction.

49. A safety device (e.g. reversing mechanism) must protect areas not visible to the operator, where the movement of the lift might trap or crush objects.

50. In the event of one of these safety devices coming into operation, the movement of the lift must immediately be stopped and movement in the opposite direction initiated.

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

51. Where the lift is at a service door situated within the direct field of vision of the driver of the vehicle, the lift may be operated by the driver when in the driver's seat.

52. In all other cases, the controls must be adjacent to the lift. They must be capable of being activated and deactivated only by the driver from his seat.

Specific requirements for manually operated lifts

53. The lift must be designed for operation by controls adjacent to the lift.

54. The lift shall be so designed that excessive forces are not required to operate it.

General requirements for ramps

55. The ramp must only be capable of operation when the vehicle is at standstill (see **Note 15**).

56. Edges on the outside must be rounded to a radius of no less than 2.5 mm. Corners on the outside must be rounded to a radius of not less than 5 mm.

57. The useable surface of a ramp must be at least 800 mm wide. The slope of the ramp, when extended or folded out on to a kerb of 150 mm in height, must not exceed 12 per cent. The slope of the ramp, when extended or folded out to the ground, must not exceed 36 per cent. (Both requirements must be met.) A kneeling system may be used to achieve this test. (see **Note 14**).

58. Any ramp which when ready for use exceeds 1,200 mm in length must be fitted with a device to prevent the wheelchair rolling off the sides.

59. Any ramp shall be capable of operating safely with a load of 300 kg.

60. The outer edge of ramp surfaces available for use by a wheelchair must be clearly marked with a band of colour 45 mm to 55 mm in width which contrasts visually with the remainder of the ramp surface. The band of colour must extend along the outermost edge and along both edges parallel to the direction of travel of the wheelchair.

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

61. A portable ramp must be secure when in its position for use. A portable ramp must be provided with a suitable position where it can be safely stowed and where it is readily available for use.

62. Deployment and stowage of the ramp may be either manual or power-operated.

Specific requirements for power operated ramps

63. Deployment and stowage of the ramp must be indicated to a person stood externally to the vehicle in the vicinity of the ramp, by flashing lights emitting a yellow colour, and an audible signal.

64. Any movement occurring during deployment and stowage of the ramp that may create a risk of injury shall be protected by a safety device(s).

65. The safety devices called for in standard 64 must stop the movement of the ramp when the ramp is subject to a mean reactive force not exceeding 150 N. The peak force may be higher than 150 N for a short time provided that it does not exceed 300 N.

66. The horizontal movement of a ramp must be interrupted when a mass of 15 kg is placed upon it.

67. Where the driver has adequate view of the ramp sufficient to monitor its deployment and use, to ensure the safety of passengers, the ramp may be operated by the driver when in the driver's seat. (This requirement may be met by a suitable indirect vision device(s)). In all other cases, the controls must be adjacent to the ramp. They must be capable of being activated and deactivated only by the driver from his seat.

Specific requirements for manually operated ramps

68. Any manually-operated ramp must be so designed that excessive forces are not required to operate the ramp.

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

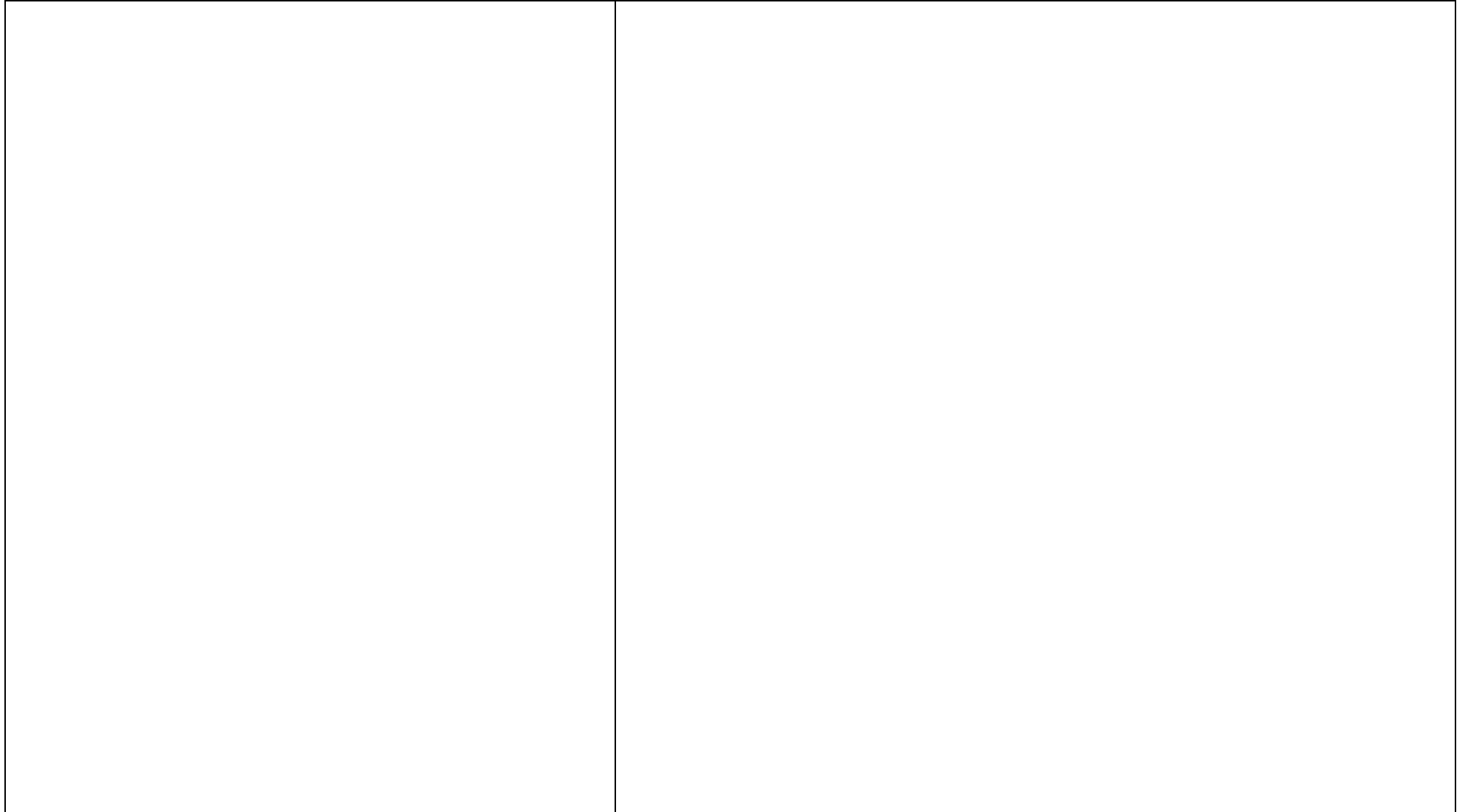


Figure 1



Pictogram for passengers with reduced mobility other than wheelchair users

Colour: Blue background with white symbol
Size: at least 130 mm diameter

Reference for the design principles of safety symbols: ISO 3864-1:2002"

Figure 2

Minimum clear space for the wheelchair user at the wheelchair space

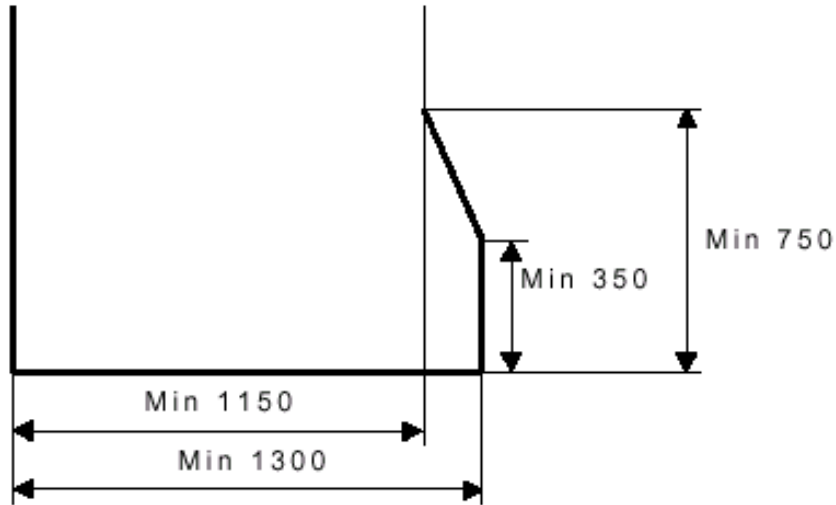
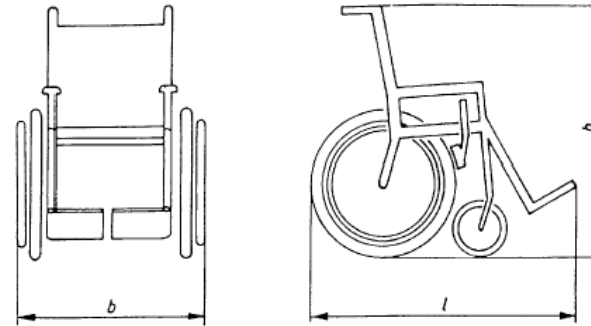


Figure 3

REFERENCE WHEELCHAIR



Overall length, l: 1200 mm

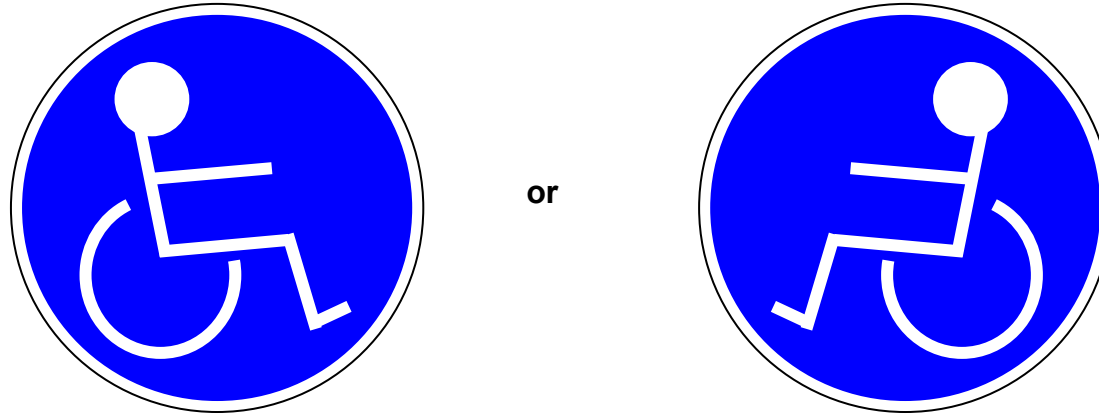
Overall width, b: 700 mm

Overall height, h: 1090 mm

Note:

A wheelchair user seated in the wheelchair adds 50 mm to the overall length and makes a height of 1350 mm above the ground.

Figure 4



Pictogram for wheelchair users

Colour:

Blue background with white symbol

Size:

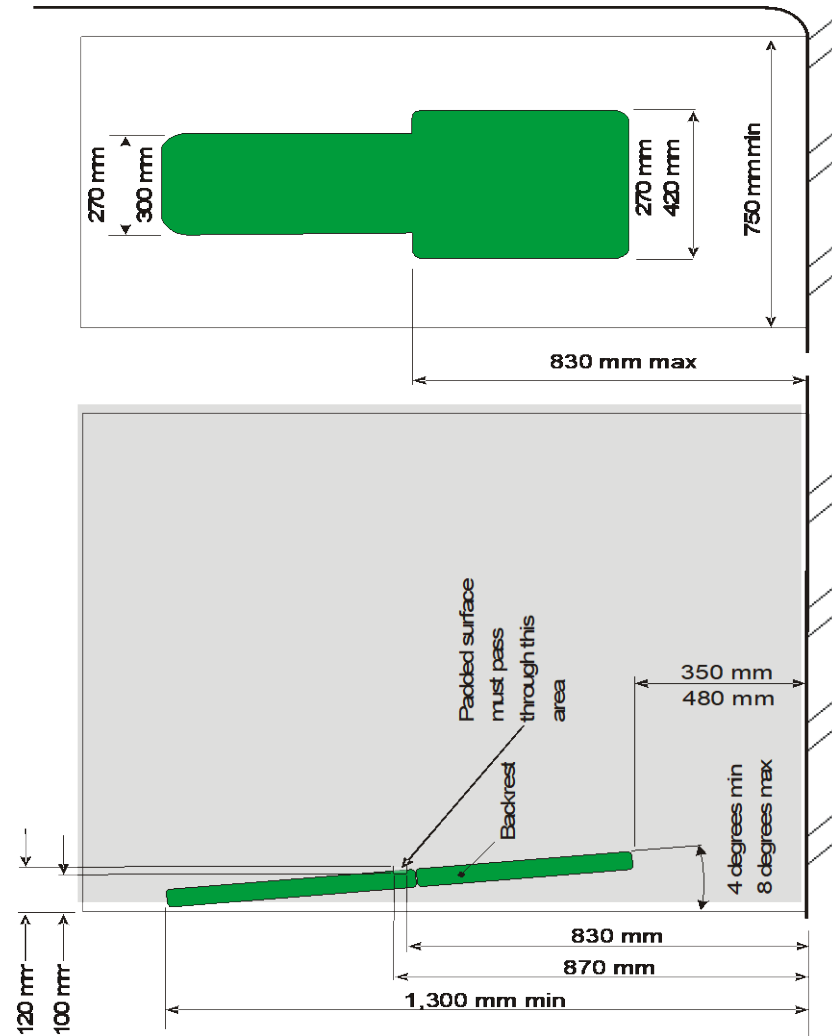
at least 130 mm diameter

Reference for the design principles of safety symbols:

ISO 3864-1:2002

Figure 5

EXAMPLE OF A BACKREST FOR A REARWARD-FACING WHEELCHAIR



The padded surface of a backrest shall form a single and continuous plane.

Annex 1

Forward-facing wheelchair - static test requirements

- 1) Each wheelchair space must be provided with a restraint system capable of restraining the wheelchair and the wheelchair user.
- 2) This restraint system and its anchorages must be designed to withstand forces equivalent to the ones required for the passenger seats and occupant restraint systems. This can be demonstrated by documentary evidence of compliance with the following static test criteria.
- 3) The forces referred to in the test must be applied in both the forward and rearward direction, separately, and on the restraint itself.
- 4) The forces must be maintained for a period of not less than 0.2 seconds.
- 5) The restraint system must be capable of withstanding the test. Permanent deformation, including partial rupture or breakage of the restraint system shall not constitute failure if the required force is sustained for the specified time. Where applicable, the locking device enabling the wheelchair to leave the vehicle shall be operable by hand after removal of the traction force.
- 6) In every case the forces must be applied to the wheelchair user restraint system by means of a traction device appropriate to the belt type as specified in Regulation No. 14.

Test Requirements M2.

In a forward direction in the case of a separate wheelchair and wheelchair user restraint system

- a) $1,110 \pm 20$ daN in the case of a lap belt. The force must be applied on the wheelchair user restraint system in the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle if the restraint system is not attached to the floor of the vehicle. If the restraint system is attached to the floor, the force must be applied in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle;
- b) 675 ± 20 daN in the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the lap portion of the belt and 675 ± 20 daN in the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the torso portion of the belt in the case of 3-point belt.
- c) $1,715 \pm 20$ daN in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the wheelchair restraint system.

- d) The forces must be applied simultaneously.

In a forward direction, in the case of a combined wheelchair and wheelchair user restraint system.

- a) $1,110 \pm 20$ daN in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the wheelchair user restraint system in the case of a lap belt.
- b) 675 ± 20 daN in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the lap portion of the belt and 675 ± 20 daN in the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the torso portion of the belt in the case of 3-point belt.
- c) $1,715 \pm 20$ daN in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the wheelchair restraint system.
- d) The forces must be applied simultaneously.

In all cases in a rearward direction

- a) 810 ± 20 daN in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the rear of the vehicle on the wheelchair restraint system.

Test Requirements M3.

In a forward direction in the case of a separate wheelchair and wheelchair user restraint system

- a) 740 ± 20 daN in the case of a lap belt. The force must be applied on the wheelchair user restraint system in the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle if the restraint system is not attached to the floor of the vehicle. If the restraint system is attached to the floor, the force must be applied in an angle 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle.
- b) 450 ± 20 daN in the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the lap portion of the belt and 450 ± 20 daN in the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the torso portion of the belt in the case of 3-point belt.
- c) $1,130 \pm 20$ daN in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the wheelchair restraint system.
- d) The forces must be applied simultaneously.

In a forward direction, in the case of a combined wheelchair and wheelchair user restraint system.

- a) 740 ± 20 daN in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the wheelchair user restraint system in the case of a lap belt.
- b) 450 ± 20 daN in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the lap portion of the belt and 450 ± 20 daN in the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the torso portion of the belt in the case of 3-point belt.
- c) $1,130 \pm 20$ daN in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle on the wheelchair restraint system.
- d) The forces must be applied simultaneously.

In all cases in a rearward direction

- a) 810 ± 20 daN in an angle of 45 ± 10 degrees to the horizontal plane of the vehicle and towards the rear of the vehicle on the wheelchair restraint system.

Annex 2

Forward-facing wheelchair - hybrid test requirements

A wheelchair space must be fitted with a wheelchair restraint system suitable for general wheelchair application and must allow the carriage of a wheelchair and a wheelchair user facing the front of the vehicle.

A wheelchair space must be fitted with a wheelchair user restraint system which shall comprise of a minimum of two anchorage points and a pelvic restraint (lap belt) designed and constructed of components intended to perform in a similar manner to those of an approved seat belt.

Any restraint system fitted to a wheelchair space shall be capable of being easily released in the case of an emergency.

Wheelchair restraint system

A wheelchair restraint system shall either:

Meet the dynamic test requirements described in A) below. And be securely attached to vehicle anchorages meeting the static test requirements in B) below **or**

Be securely attached to vehicle anchorages such that the combination of restraint and anchorages meets the requirements of A) below.

A)

A wheelchair restraint system shall be subject to a dynamic test carried out in accordance with the following requirements:

- a) A representative wheelchair test trolley of mass 85 kg shall, from a speed of between 48 km/h to 50 km/h to rest, be subject to a deceleration-time pulse:
 - i. exceeding 20 g in the forward direction for a cumulative period of at least 0.015 seconds;
 - II. exceeding 15 g in the forward direction for a cumulative period of at least 0.04 seconds;
 - III. exceeding a duration of 0.075 seconds;
 - IV. not exceeding 28 g and for not more than 0.08 seconds;
 - V. not exceeding a duration of more than 0.12 seconds,

And

(Except in cases where the same restraints are used for the forward and rearward direction or if an equivalent test has been conducted)

- b) A representative wheelchair test trolley of mass 85 kg shall, from a speed of between 48 km/h to 50 km/h to rest, be subject to a deceleration-time pulse:
- i. exceeding 5 g in the rearward direction for a cumulative period of at least 0.015 seconds;
 - ii. not exceeding 8 g in the rearward direction and for not more than 0.02 seconds;

For the above tests, the wheelchair restraint system shall be attached to either:

Anchorage fixed to the test rig which represents the geometry of the anchorages in a vehicle for which the restraint system is intended, **or**

Anchorage forming part of a representative section of the vehicle, together with any fitting provided in the vehicle, which are likely to contribute to the strength or rigidity of the structure, for which the restraint system is intended

B)

A static test shall be carried out on the anchorage points for both the wheelchair restraint system and the wheelchair user restraint in accordance with the following requirements:

- i) The forces specified shall be applied by means of a device reproducing the geometry of the wheelchair restraint system;
- ii) The forces must be applied as rapidly as possible through the central vertical axis of the wheelchair space.
- iii) The force shall be maintained for a period of not less than 0.2 seconds.
- iv) The test shall be carried out on a representative section of the vehicle structure together with any fitting provided in the vehicle which is likely to contribute to the strength or rigidity of the structure.

Forces required for wheelchair restraint (M2 vehicles)

In the case of anchorages provided for a wheelchair restraint system:

1,110 ± 20 daN applied in the longitudinal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle at a height of not less than 200 mm and not more than 300 mm measured vertically from the floor of the wheelchair space,

and

550 ± 20 daN applied in the longitudinal plane of the vehicle and towards the rear of the vehicle at a height of not less than 200 mm and not more than 300 mm measured vertically from the floor of the wheelchair space.

The forces specified shall be applied by means of a device reproducing the geometry of the wheelchair restraint system.

The forces shall be applied simultaneously in the forward direction and at an angle of 10 ± 5 degrees above the horizontal plane.

The forces shall be applied in the rearward direction and at an angle of 10 ± 5 degrees above the horizontal plane.

Forces required for wheelchair restraint (M3 vehicles)

In the case of anchorages provided for a wheelchair restraint system:

740 ± 20 daN applied in the longitudinal plane of the vehicle and towards the front of the vehicle at a height of not less than 200 mm and not more than 300 mm measured vertically from the floor of the wheelchair space,

and

370 ± 20 daN applied in the longitudinal plane of the vehicle and towards the rear of the vehicle at a height of not less than 200 mm and not more than 300 mm measured vertically from the floor of the wheelchair space;

The forces specified shall be applied by means of a device reproducing the geometry of the wheelchair restraint system.

The forces shall be applied simultaneously in the forward direction and at an angle of 10 ± 5 degrees above the horizontal plane.

The forces shall be applied in the rearward direction and at an angle of 10 ± 5 degrees above the horizontal plane.

Forces required for wheelchair user restraint (M2 & M3 vehicles)

In the case of anchorages provided for a wheelchair user restraint system the forces shall be in accordance with the requirements of Regulation No. 14. The forces shall be applied by means of a device reproducing the geometry of the wheelchair user restraint and by means of a traction device as appropriate to the belt type as specified in Regulation No. 14.

General requirements

A wheelchair user restraint shall comply with the test requirements specified in Regulation No. 16 or have met the requirements of the above tests. (A seat belt approved to Regulation No. 16 and so marked shall be deemed to comply).

The above tests will be deemed to have failed unless the following requirements are met:

No part of the system shall have failed, or shall have become detached from its anchorage or from the vehicle during the test;

Mechanisms to release the wheelchair and user shall be capable of release after completion of the test;

The wheelchair shall not move more than 200 mm in the longitudinal plane of the vehicle during the test;

No part of the system shall be deformed to such an extent after completion of the test that, because of sharp edges or other protrusions, the part is capable of causing injury.

Operating instructions must be clearly displayed adjacent to the wheelchair spaces.

Annex 3

Rearward facing wheelchair - requirements

Vehicles not required to have occupant restraint systems fitted may, as an alternative to the provisions of Annex 1 or 2, be provided with a wheelchair space designed for the wheelchair user to travel unrestrained with the wheelchair facing rearwards against a support or backrest, in accordance with the following provisions:-

- a) One of the longitudinal sides of the space for a wheelchair must rest against a side or wall of the vehicle or a partition.
- b) A support or backrest perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the vehicle must be provided in the forward end of the wheelchair space.
- c) The support or backrest must be designed for the wheels or the back of the wheelchair to rest against the support or backrest in order to avoid the wheelchair from tipping over and must comply with the provisions:-
 - i) **A backrest** fitted to a wheelchair space must be fitted perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the vehicle and must be capable of bearing a load of 250 ± 20 daN applied to the centre of the padded surface of the backrest, at a height of not less than 600 mm and of not more than 800 mm measured vertically from the floor of the wheelchair space, for a minimum of 1.5 seconds by means of a block 200 mm x 200 mm in the horizontal plane of the vehicle towards the front of the vehicle. The backrest must not deflect more than 100 mm or suffer permanent deformation or damage.
 - ii) **A support** fitted to a wheelchair space must be fitted perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the vehicle and must be capable of withstanding a force of 250 ± 20 daN applied to the centre of the support, for a minimum of 1.5 seconds in the horizontal plane of the vehicle towards the front of the vehicle in the middle of the support. The support must not deflect more than 100 mm or suffer permanent deformation or damage.

(An **example** of a suitable backrest is shown in Figure 5)

- d) A handrail or handhold must be fitted to the side or wall of the vehicle or a partition in such a way to allow the wheelchair user to grasp it easily. This handrail must not extend over the vertical projection of the wheelchair space, except where the handrail is at a height not less than 850 mm above the floor of the wheelchair space then it is permitted to intrude by not more than 90 mm.
- e) A retractable handrail or any equivalent rigid device must be fitted on the opposite side of the wheelchair space in order to restrict any lateral shift of the wheelchair and to allow the wheelchair user to grasp it easily.
- f) A sign shall be fixed adjacent to the wheelchair area with the following text: (or words to that effect)

"This space is reserved for a wheelchair. The wheelchair must be placed facing rearwards resting against the support or backrest with the brakes on".

Access for Passengers with Reduced Mobility 52Z

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|--|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Add the title Class 1 etc to RS 11, 12, & 13 |
| 3 | 29/04/2010 | Add Note 10 and link it to RS 32 |
| 4 | 29/10/2010 | Rewrite RS 17 & RS 20, add new note and link to RS 20, re-number notes and simplify text in Annex 3 |
| 5 | 03/05/2011 | Reword foreword, add text to RS 14, add new text to Annex 2, add new text to item f of Annex 3 |
| 6 | 31/07/2011 | Add additional text to RS 24 |
| 7 | 30/11/2011 | Add note 12 and link to RS 45 |
| 8 | 30/04/2012 | Reword RS 4, 5, and 16; split RS 35 into two and renumber remaining standards, add Note 13 |
| 9 | 11/02/2013 | Amend note 4, RS4, 5, insert new note 7 & link to RS19, amend title for RS35, renumber RS63, insert new header and move RS62 to RS68 |
| 10 | 10/04/2018 | Reword Note 15, insert new Note 16 and link to RS 46. |
| 11 | 01/09/2020 | RS 57 requirements clarified, and RS 22 door aperture clarified. |
| 12 | 15/04/2024 | Clarification of application heading above RS 6; remove reference to Time Bound Concession at RS 20. |

This page intentionally left blank

62 Hydrogen Powered Motor Vehicles

Application: All Vehicles powered by hydrogen

For the information of applicants only

For the required standards for hydrogen fuelled vehicles, please refer to Section 03A.

Hydrogen powered vehicles can be either internal combustion engine, with hydrogen fuel burnt in a similar way to petrol, or they can be hydrogen fuel cell, where hydrogen is converted to electricity in a chemical reaction, and the electricity powers the vehicle via an electric motor. The hydrogen can be stored (under high pressure) in compressed gas or liquefied form.

Method of Inspection

Confirm that the vehicle is a Hydrogen powered vehicle, by noting the presence of a Hydrogen fuel tank, and in the case of hydrogen fuel cell vehicle, the fuel cell and electric motor.

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 | 30/04/2012 | New Requirement |
| 2 | 10/04/2018 | Amend MOI |
| 3 | 01/09/2020 | Clarify location of requirements |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

65 Advanced Emergency Braking Systems (AEBS)

Application: All Vehicles subject to IVA requirements

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | |
|---|---|--|--|---|--|---|---|--|
| <p>Ensure the vehicle or system as presented is accompanied by satisfactory evidence in the form of:</p> <p>The technical provisions of Regulation (EU) 347/2012</p> <p>or</p> <p>The technical provisions of UNECE Regulation 131</p> <p>This section does not apply to:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Off-road vehicles of categories M2 and M3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Special purpose vehicles of categories M2 and M3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Vehicles of categories M2 and M3 with more than three axles.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Vehicles of Class A, Class I & Class II</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Articulated buses of Class A, Class I & Class II</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A completed vehicle where the complete or incomplete vehicle it is based upon was manufactured before 1 September 2018.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A complete vehicle, manufactured before 1 September 2018.</td> </tr> </table> | Off-road vehicles of categories M2 and M3 | Special purpose vehicles of categories M2 and M3 | Vehicles of categories M2 and M3 with more than three axles. | Vehicles of Class A, Class I & Class II | Articulated buses of Class A, Class I & Class II | A completed vehicle where the complete or incomplete vehicle it is based upon was manufactured before 1 September 2018. | A complete vehicle, manufactured before 1 September 2018. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory documentary evidence of compliance with the required standard for (Advanced Emergency Braking Systems (AEBS)) |
| Off-road vehicles of categories M2 and M3 | | | | | | | | |
| Special purpose vehicles of categories M2 and M3 | | | | | | | | |
| Vehicles of categories M2 and M3 with more than three axles. | | | | | | | | |
| Vehicles of Class A, Class I & Class II | | | | | | | | |
| Articulated buses of Class A, Class I & Class II | | | | | | | | |
| A completed vehicle where the complete or incomplete vehicle it is based upon was manufactured before 1 September 2018. | | | | | | | | |
| A complete vehicle, manufactured before 1 September 2018. | | | | | | | | |

Advanced Emergency Braking Systems (AEBS) 65

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|-------------------|
| <p>A completed vehicle where the complete or incomplete vehicle upon which it is based has a gross weight not more than 8 tonnes or has hydraulic brakes or is not equipped with pneumatic rear suspension; and was manufactured before 1 November 2020.</p> | |
| <p>A complete vehicle having a gross weight not more than 8 tonnes or has hydraulic brakes or is not equipped with pneumatic rear suspension; and which was manufactured before 1 November 2020.</p> | |
| <p>Completed vehicles based on a complete or incomplete vehicle of category N1 or M1.</p> | |
| <p>Vehicles built by a manufacturer which made fewer than 1,000 chassis and unitized bodies in the previous calendar year.</p> | |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 01/07/2018 | Added to manual |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

66 Lane Departure Warning Systems (LDWS)

Application: All Vehicles subject to IVA requirements

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|--|--|--|---|--|---|
| <p>Ensure the vehicle or system as presented is accompanied by satisfactory evidence in the form of:</p> <p>The technical provisions of Regulation (EU) 351/2012</p> <p>or</p> <p>The technical provisions of UNECE Regulation 130</p> <p>This section does not apply to:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Vehicles of Class A, Class I and Class II</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Off-road vehicles of categories M2 and M3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>M3 articulated buses of Class A, Class II & Class II</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Special purpose vehicles of categories M2 and M3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Vehicles of categories M2 and M3 with more than three axles.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A completed vehicle where the complete or incomplete vehicle upon which it is based was manufactured before 1 September 2018.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A complete vehicle which was manufactured before 1 September 2018.</td> </tr> </table> | Vehicles of Class A, Class I and Class II | Off-road vehicles of categories M2 and M3 | M3 articulated buses of Class A, Class II & Class II | Special purpose vehicles of categories M2 and M3 | Vehicles of categories M2 and M3 with more than three axles. | A completed vehicle where the complete or incomplete vehicle upon which it is based was manufactured before 1 September 2018. | A complete vehicle which was manufactured before 1 September 2018. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory documentary evidence of compliance with the required standard for (Lane Departure Warning Systems). |
| Vehicles of Class A, Class I and Class II | | | | | | | | |
| Off-road vehicles of categories M2 and M3 | | | | | | | | |
| M3 articulated buses of Class A, Class II & Class II | | | | | | | | |
| Special purpose vehicles of categories M2 and M3 | | | | | | | | |
| Vehicles of categories M2 and M3 with more than three axles. | | | | | | | | |
| A completed vehicle where the complete or incomplete vehicle upon which it is based was manufactured before 1 September 2018. | | | | | | | | |
| A complete vehicle which was manufactured before 1 September 2018. | | | | | | | | |

Lane Departure Warning Systems (LDWS) 66

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|-------------------|
| <p>Completed vehicles based on a complete or incomplete vehicle of category N1.</p> <p>Vehicles built by a manufacturer which made fewer than 1,000 chassis and unitized bodies in the previous calendar year.</p> | |

Record of Revision

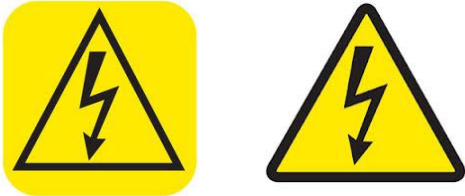
| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|-------------------------|
| 1 | 01/07/2018 | Section added to manual |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

69 Electrical Safety

Application: Vehicles equipped with one or more traction motor(s) operated by electric power

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|---|
| <p>This section should be read in conjunction with the required standards set out in General Construction.</p> <p>See Glossary of Terms for definition of a Hybrid Electric Vehicle.</p> <p>In the case of unmodified Mass Produced Vehicles, the standards in this section shall be considered to be met. Where evidence suggests that the vehicle has been modified, the Examiner shall assess whether the modification would be likely to materially affect the performance of the relevant component or system, and if so, carry out assessment against the RS.</p> <p>Ensure the vehicle or system as presented is accompanied by satisfactory evidence in the form of:</p> <p>Original mass produced vehicle approval to ECE R100.01</p> <p>or</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A test report to ECE R100 witnessed by the Approval Authority (VCA) or Authorised Technical Service • Model Report created by TASS <p>and in these cases, a Visual Inspection is required</p> <p>Note 1: The use of stretchy or soft coverings over high voltage terminals is strictly forbidden.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The vehicle as presented must be accompanied by satisfactory documentary evidence of compliance with the required standard for (electric vehicles). <p>Visual Inspection</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. All high voltage cable terminations must be suitably protected, these protections (solid insulator, barrier, enclosure, etc.) shall not be able to be opened, disassembled, or removed without the use of tools (see Note 1). 3. Any enclosure carrying high voltage shall be clearly marked with an indelible label (see Figure 1) affixed in a visible location. 4. All visible high voltage cables must be orange in colour. 5. All metal enclosures with internal high voltage must have an earth path for protection against electrical shock (this may be a separate bonding or the mounting arrangement where it does not isolate the enclosure). |

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|--|-------------------|
| <p>Figure 1</p>  | |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 01/07/2018 | New section. 'Information only' deleted |
| 2 | 15/04/2024 | Section renamed to match RV(A)R 2020; application clarified; reference to Glossary of Terms added to MOI. Add detail to MOI to clarify requirements for unmodified mass produced vehicles. Removal of RS3 & re-numbering of remaining RS (TSE IVA M2M3 069 001) |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

General Construction

Application: All Vehicles subject to IVA requirements

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--|
| <p>The following section assesses the vehicles suitability for use under all normal operating conditions, including when it is laden to its maximum permitted axle/gross vehicle weight and considers the effects of vibrations and the forces imposed by its design speed, acceleration characteristics, braking and cornering. The vehicle must at all times present no danger to the occupants or other road users.</p> <p>All components and attachment methods will be compared to those employed on ECWVTA vehicles. This does not prevent a manufacturer utilising other construction methods or materials providing they offer at least the equivalent performance of those employed on an approved vehicles.</p> <p>Note 1: A television monitor which can be seen from the driving position and capable of operation when the vehicle is in motion is not acceptable, unless if it provides visibility to the rear of the vehicle, a navigation map, vehicle specific information or a combination of these items.</p> <p>Note 2 This assessment includes the attachment of any component/assembly of any structure, the strength and suitability of materials used, (including pipes etc.), all fastenings, (welding, brazing, bonding, rivets, nuts and bolts etc.) are to be assessed for suitability, completeness and security.</p> <p>Note 3 When assessing a component for leaks the original design of the component will be taken into consideration.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All aspects of the design and construction of the vehicle must be such that no Immediate danger is caused or likely to be caused to any person in the vehicle or to other road users (see Note 1). 2. When driven, the safe control of the vehicle must not be impaired or likely to be impaired, due to a design or construction feature or characteristic. 3. The vehicle structure and all components including their attachment must be suitable and of adequate strength (see Note 2). 4. A transmission/braking component which rotates during vehicle operation, electrical component, steering or suspension component, wheel or tyre must not foul on another component, or be likely to foul under normal operating conditions. 5. Fuel and electrical components must not be subject to either a corrosive environment or be exposed to heat sources likely to cause premature failure. 6. All steering, suspension, brake, and fuel system components must not be leaking (see Note 3). 7. All electrical cables/wires must be free from chaffing and secured at intervals of at least every 300mm unless contained in a secure hollow component (see Note 4). 8. All electrical components must be secure, be of adequate capacity and insulated as required as to prevent short circuiting during operation. |

General Construction

| Method of Inspection | Required Standard |
|---|--------------------------|
| Note 4: This does not apply to control leads (fly leads) used on specialised equipment i.e., power ramps and access lifts. | |

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|------------------------------|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 29/07/2009 | Add note 4 and link to RS 07 |
| 3 | 10/04/2018 | Amend MOI |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

This page intentionally left blank

Glossary of Terms

Air Bag

A flexible bag fitted to a vehicle designed to be filled with gas under pressure in order to protect the driver or front seat passenger in the event of a collision involving the front of the vehicle.

Alternative Fuel

A fuel or power source which serves, at least partly, as a substitute for fossil oil sources in the energy supply to transport and which has the potential to contribute to its de-carbonisation and enhance the environmental performance of the transport sector, consisting of—

- (a) electricity consumed in all types of electric vehicles;
- (b) hydrogen;
- (c) natural gas, including biomethane, in gaseous form and liquefied form;
- (d) liquefied petroleum gas;
- (e) mechanical energy from on-board sources, including waste heat;

Alternatively fuelled vehicle

A motor vehicle powered wholly or in part by an alternative fuel and which has been approved under the Framework Directive;”.

Armoured Vehicle

A vehicle intended for the protection of conveyed passengers and/or goods and complying with armour plating anti-bullet requirements.

‘**Anti - bullet requirements**’ shall be interpreted as meaning; the driver and passenger compartment front, rear and sides including doors and glazing are capable of withstanding ballistic penetration from small arms fire. e.g. materials to EN 1063 or an equivalent level of protection.

Approval Authority

The Vehicle Certification Agency are the U.K. Approval Authority.

CNG

Compressed Natural Gas

Date of Manufacture

In the case of an Amateur Built Vehicle is, unless otherwise stated in the regulations or Inspection Manual:

- the date on which the vehicle is presented for examination;

or

- a date prior to the date the vehicle is presented for examination if there is conclusive evidence the vehicle was completed and included all the parts which it needs to comply with the prescribed requirements and was in such a condition as to be acceptable to test on that date.

Designated Seating Position

A position where there is a seat designated for normal use while the vehicle is travelling on the road.

Disabled Person's Belt

A seat belt which has been specifically designed or adapted for use by an adult or young person suffering from some physical defect or disability and which is intended for use solely by such a person.

Double Windows

Two separate units installed in a vehicle as separate inner and outer panes.

Emergency vehicle

An **emergency vehicle** is any vehicle that is designated and authorized to respond to an Emergency in a life-threatening situation. These vehicles are usually operated by designated agencies, often part of the government, but also run by charities, non-governmental organisations and some commercial companies.

Extreme outer edge

In relation to the side of a vehicle, the vertical plane parallel with the longitudinal axis of the vehicle and coinciding with its lateral outer edge, disregard the projection of

- a. distortion of any tyre due to the weight of the vehicle
- b. connections for tyre pressure gauges
- c. anti-skid devices mounted on the wheels
- d. rear view mirrors
- e. lamps and reflectors
- f. custom seals and devices for securing and protecting such seals
- g. special equipment (**as listed in Annex 1 section 48**)
- h. in respect of Section 49 (Exterior Projections) only: windows, handles, hinges, push buttons and fuel tank filler caps.

Glossary of Terms

Harness Belt

Means an adult belt which is a harness belt comprising a lap belt and shoulder straps.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

A vehicle, including vehicles which draw energy from a consumable fuel only for the purpose of recharging the electrical energy/power storage device that for the purpose of mechanical propulsion draws energy from both of the following on-vehicle sources of stored energy/power:

- (a) A consumable fuel;
- (b) A battery, capacitor, flywheel/generator, or other electrical energy/power storage device.

Illuminating Surface

Should be taken to be the area of the “reflector” to the rear of the bulbs. Where lamps are mounted in a common housing and are “E” marked, the separation criteria should be assumed to be met.

Insecure

A component or its fixing is, due to its design or a construction feature, not completely attached to the vehicle structure or to another associated component as intended.

Lap Belt

A seat belt which passes across the front of the wearer’s pelvic region, and which is designed for use by an adult.

Longitudinal Plane

A vertical plane parallel to the longitudinal axis of the vehicle.

LPG

Liquid Petroleum Gas.

Major Manufacturer

A vehicle manufacturer that produces vehicles approved to EC Whole Vehicle Type Approval standards.

Manufacturer’s Plate

A piece of durable material e.g. metal or plastic that is likely to last the life of vehicle, and which is permanently marked with the required markings.

Mass In Running Order

In relation to the vehicle weight, means the mass of the unladen vehicle with bodywork, and with coupling device in the case of a towing vehicle, in running order, (including coolant, oils, 90 per cent fuel, 100 per cent other liquids except used waters, tools, spare wheel and driver (75 kg), and, for buses and coaches, the mass of the crew member (75 kg) if there is a crew seat in the vehicle.

Glossary of Terms

Matched Pair

For the purpose of this manual only:

Lamps fitted to the vehicle must be of the same brightness, intensity, colour, shape, height, and position.

Nearside

Taken to be the side of the vehicle nearest the kerb when used in UK.

Obvious modification

Where evidence suggests that the vehicle / component has been modified which invalidates the approval, evidence must be easily recognisable without the need of a detailed inspection.

Off-road Vehicles**Vehicles in Categories M2, and M3**

Are to be considered to be off-road vehicles either:

(A) if the wheels are designed to be driven simultaneously, including vehicles where the drive to one axle can be disengaged,

Or

(B) if the following requirements are met

1. At least one front and at least one rear axle are designed to be driven simultaneously, including vehicles where the drive to one axle can be disengaged.
2. There is at least one differential locking mechanism or at least one mechanism having a similar effect.
3. They can climb a 25% gradient calculated for a solo vehicle
4. **M2 & M3** maximum mass not exceeding **7.5** tonnes must satisfy at least **five** out of the following six requirements. **M3** if their maximum mass exceeds **7,5** tonnes must satisfy at least **four** of the following six requirements:
 - The approach angle shall be at least 25 degrees
 - The departure angle shall be at least 25 degrees
 - The ramp angle shall be at least 25 degrees
 - The ground clearance under the front axle shall be at least 250mm
 - The ground clearance between axles shall be at least 300mm
 - The ground clearance under the rear axle shall be at least 250mm

Glossary of Terms

Offside

Taken to be the side of the vehicle furthest away from the kerb when used in UK.

Power Operated Service Door:

A service door which, in any mode, can be operated exclusively by energy other than muscular energy and the opening and closing of which, if not automatically operated, is remotely controlled by the driver or a member of the crew.

Production Vehicle

A vehicle of a make, model and type, mass produced by the vehicle manufacturer.

Retractable step:

If a step is permanently fixed to the vehicle and is able to be stowed away when not in use it should be considered as a retractable step. This would apply whether it actually retracts or flips up to its stowed position; this can be a power, automatic or manual operation.

Seat Displacement Device

A device to permit; forward tipping of a seat, or the back rest to fold down.

Servo Assisted

A system where the muscular energy of the driver is supplemented by another energy source.

Unladen weight

The unladen weight of any vehicle is the weight of the vehicle excluding passengers, goods, or other items. It includes the body and all parts normally used with the vehicle or trailer when in use on the road but does not include the weight of the fuel or, if an electric vehicle, the batteries.

Zero emission vehicle (ZEV)

A vehicle without an internal combustion engine, or with an internal combustion engine that emits less than 1g CO₂/kWh as determined in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 595/2009 and its implementing measures.

Record of Revision

| Revision | Date | Description of Change |
|----------|------------|---|
| 1 | 24/04/2009 | |
| 2 | 03/05/2011 | Add definitions |
| 3 | 30/05/2011 | Add definition for Armoured Vehicle |
| 4 | 11/02/2013 | Add definitions for Power Operated Service Door and Retractable Step |
| 5 | 10/04/2018 | Add definition for unladen weight & Alternative fuels, Remove definitions kerbside weight, Body Plan Form, Breakaway Cable, Brake Efficiency, Rigid Material and Secondary coupling. Amend definition of major manufacturer. Change <i>external surface</i> definition to extreme outer edge, add Off road vehicle. |
| 6 | 15/04/2024 | Definition of Hybrid Electric Vehicle and Zero Emission Vehicle added. |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |



Driver & Vehicle
Standards
Agency

Contact us

DVSA
Berkeley House
Croydon Street
Bristol
BS5 0DA

www.gov.uk/dvsa

Telephone

0300 123 9000

[Find out about call charges](#)

Monday to Friday - 7.30am until 6.00pm (normal working hours)